

**CADOGAN**<sup>chess</sup>

# Caro-Kann Smyslov System 4...Nd7



Eduard Gufeld & Oleg Stetsko



CADOGAN CHESS BOOKS

**Caro-Kann:  
Smyslov System 4...d7**

## CADOGAN CHESS BOOKS

*Chief Advisor:* Garry Kasparov

*Editor:* Murray Chandler

*Russian Series Editor:* Ken Neat

*Other chess titles from Cadogan include:*

**The Life and Games of Mikhail Tal**

Mikhail Tal

**The Genius of Paul Morphy**

Chris Ward

**Improve Your Chess Now**

Jonathan Tisdall

**Ivan Sokolov's Best Games**

Ivan Sokolov

**Winning in the Opening**

John Walker

**The Final Countdown**

Hajenius & Van Riemsdijk

**The Art of Chess Analysis**

Jan Timman

**Vasily Smyslov: Endgame Virtuoso**

Vasily Smyslov

**Basic Chess Openings**

Gabor Kallai

**Practical Opening Tips**

Edmar Mednis

**More Basic Chess Openings**

Gabor Kallai

**The Soviet Championships**

Taimanov & Cafferty

**Lessons in Chess**

Garry Kasparov

**Queen's Indian Defence**

Bogdan Lalic

**Fire on Board: Shirov's Best Games**

Alexei Shirov

**An Opening Repertoire for the Positional Player**

Gufeld & Kalinichenko

For a complete catalogue of CADOGAN CHESS books (which includes the Pergamon Chess and Maxwell Macmillan Chess lists) please write to:

Cadogan Books plc, 27-29 Berwick St, London W1V 3RF

Tel: (0171) 287 6555

Fax: (0171) 734 1733

**Caro-Kann:  
Smyslov System 4...d7**

by

Eduard Gufeld and Oleg Stetsko

*Translated and Edited by Ken Neat*

**CADOGAN CHESS**

English Translation Copyright © 1998 Ken Neat

First published 1998 by Cadogan Books plc, 27-29 Berwick Street,  
London W1V 3RF

Distributed in North America by The Globe Pequot Press, 6 Business Park  
Rd, P.O. Box 833, Old Saybrook, Connecticut 06475-0833

*All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means: electronic, electrostatic, magnetic tape, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior permission in writing from the publishers.*

**British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data**

A CIP catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 185744 104 4

*Cover design by David Stanley*

*Typeset by Ken Neat, Durham*

*Printed in Great Britain by BPC Wheatons Ltd, Exeter*

# Contents

<i>Conventional Signs</i>	6
<i>Introduction</i>	7
PART I: 5 ♘g5	15
1 5...♗gf6 6 ♕d3 e6 7 ♗1f3 ♕d6 8 0-0	17
2 8 ♖e2 h6 9 ♗e4 ♗xe4 10 ♖xe4 ♗f6	25
3 8...♗c7	43
4 5...♗df6	51
PART II: 5 ♕c4 (5...♗gf6 6 ♗g5 e6 7 ♖e2 ♗b6)	58
5 8 ♕d3 h6 9 ♗5f3 c5 10 dxc5 ♕xc5	61
6 8...♗bd7	74
7 8 ♕b3 h6 9 ♗5f3 a5	82
8 8...c5	95
PART III: 5 ♗f3 ♗gf6	102
9 6 ♗xf6+ ♗xf6	104
10 6 ♗g3 e6	113
11 6...c5	122
<i>List of Illustrative Games</i>	125
<i>Index of Variations</i>	127

# Conventional Signs

!	good move
!!	excellent move
!?	move deserving consideration
?!	dubious move
?	incorrect move
??	blunder
±	clear advantage for White
∓	clear advantage for Black
±	slight advantage for White
∓	slight advantage for Black
=	equal position
1-0	White wins
0-1	Black wins
½-½	draw
Ch	Championship
corr.	correspondence game
CT	Candidates Tournament
IZ	Interzonal Tournament
OL	Olympiad
WC	World Championship

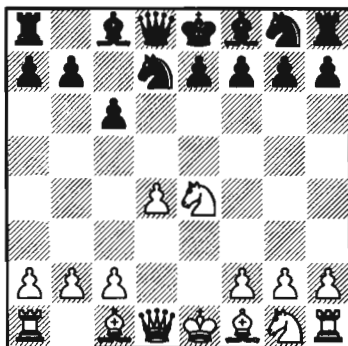


# Introduction

The popular branch of the Caro-Kann Defence, characterised after 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 Qc3 dxe4 4 Qxe4 by the developing move 4...Qd7, enjoys the reputation of having been a favourite defence of the classic World Champions. Introduced by the famous chess researcher of the first third of our century, Aron Nimzowitsch, this continuation forms the basis of a promising system of play, in which Black, despite his somewhat passive position, avoids serious positional concessions and can gradually hope for equality, which is fully in accordance with the classical views on playing the opening.

Therefore it is no accident that in the 1940s it drew the attention of one of the pre-war World Championship contenders Salo Flohr, and that in the 1950s and 1960s it was actively developed by two excellent 'defenders', the seventh and ninth World Champions Vasily Smyslov and Tigran Petrosian. The variation could well have been named after them both (in fact Petrosian's claim is perhaps the stronger, as he played it throughout his career), but in the West the name of the Smyslov System has become customary.

In recent years this variation has become a major weapon in the black repertoire of the twelfth World Champion Anatoly Karpov.



With ...Qg6 (or ...Qd6) Black plans to drive away or exchange the centralised white knight, avoiding the doubled pawns after 4...Qf6, as well as the positional concessions that arise after the bishop development 4...Qf5. Then ...e7-e6 leads to a pawn structure where Black's main way of freeing his game is by preparing the advance ...c6-c5, which can lead to White gaining a queenside pawn majority and the long-term prospect of obtaining an outside passed pawn in the endgame.

One drawback to the system is the delay in the development of Black's light-square bishop, which he often has to fianchetto in analogy with the Rubinstein Variation in the French Defence, an operation that takes time and allows White a persistent initiative, based on his occupation of e5 with a knight. However, despite the

outward passivity of Black's position, the absence of pawn weaknesses enables him, with accurate play, to maintain the balance, as though confirming the philosophical thesis, that drawbacks are sometimes the consequence of virtues. This was sensed most subtly by the World Champions, and in the years when the variation was being established, in the games of Smyslov and Petrosian their opponents' attempts to gain an advantage by simple means were equally simply parried by Black, as he imperceptibly eroded White's initiative. With the development of more complicated variations, Black was also able to find counter-actions. Here are a few examples from the early experience of the World Champions.

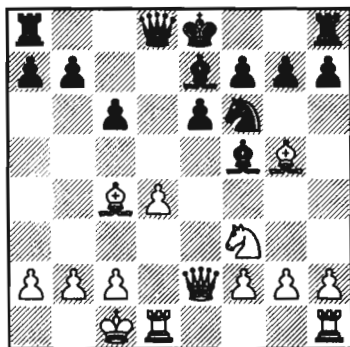
Game 1  
**Matanovic-Petrosian**  
USSR v. Yugoslavia 1959

1	e4	c6
2	d4	d5
3	♘c3	dxe4
4	♘xe4	♘d7
5	♘f3	♘gf6
6	♘xf6+	♘xf6
7	♙c4	♙f5
8	♚e2	

Matanovic carries out the plan with queenside castling (nowadays 8 0-0, to support the knight at e5, is more usual), being under no doubt that Petrosian would have prepared for 8 ♘e5, where in the analogous 1957 match he had an unfortunate

experience in his game with Gligoric: 8...e6 9 ♙b3 ♙d6 10 ♚e2 ♘d7?! (10...♚c7) 11 ♙d2 a5? (11...♘xe5) 12 ♘xf7!, and Black came under a strong attack – cf. *Game 38*.

8	...	e6
9	♙g5	♙e7
10	0-0-0	



10 ... ♙g4!

Simplicity is the basis of beauty, and the outwardly simple means, with which Petrosian outplays his opponent, allow his play to be compared with the strategic masterpieces of Capablanca, the third World Champion. With this exchange of White's most important piece – the knight, which was aiming for e5 – he demonstrates a subtle understanding of the position.

11	h3	♙xf3
12	♚xf3	♘d5
13	♙xe7	

After 13 ♙d2 Black can launch a counterattack: 13...b5 14 ♙b3 a5.

13	...	♚xe7
14	♚he1	

Even Bobby Fischer himself was unable to shake Petrosian's position (Bled 1961): 14 ♖b1 ♜d8 15 ♜e4 b5 16 ♙d3 a5 17 c3 ♜d6 18 g3 b4 19 c4 ♟f6, and Black maintained the balance.

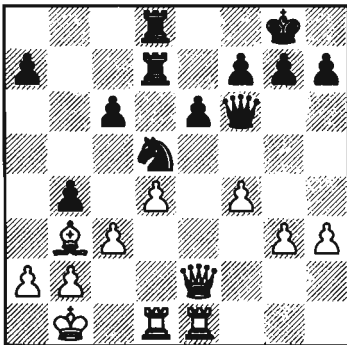
- 14 ... 0-0  
 15 ♖b1 ♜ad8  
 16 ♙b3 ♜f6  
 17 ♜e2?

White is labouring under an illusion. Had he appreciated the change in the situation, he would have exchanged queens by 17 ♜xf6 ♟xf6, with prospects of a draw. But he is still thinking about the initiative, as indicated by his pawn offensive on the kingside.

- 17 ... ♜d7  
 18 c3 b5  
 19 g3 ♜fd8  
 20 f4

It was not yet too late to think about equalising with 20 ♙xd5.

- 20 ... b4



- 21 ♜f3?!

For the sake of his illusory

initiative, White allows a weakening of his queenside pawns. Of course, 21 ♙xd5 ♜xd5 22 cxb4 was necessary.

- 21 ... bxc3  
 22 bxc3 c5!

Now Black firmly seizes the initiative. If 23 c4 he was intending 23...♟b4! 24 dxc5 ♟d3.

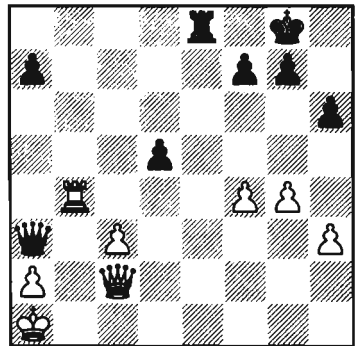
- 23 ♜e5 cxd4  
 24 ♙xd5 ♜xd5  
 25 ♜xd5 exd5!

A further subtlety. Here the isolated pawn is not a weakness, whereas after 25...♜xd5 26 ♜xd4 White can successfully defend.

- 26 ♜xd4 h6  
 27 g4

27 ♜xd5 loses to 27...♜b8+ 28 ♟c2 ♜b6.

- 27 ... ♜e7  
 28 ♜f2 ♜b8+  
 29 ♟a1 ♜a3  
 30 ♜c2 ♜e8  
 31 ♜b4

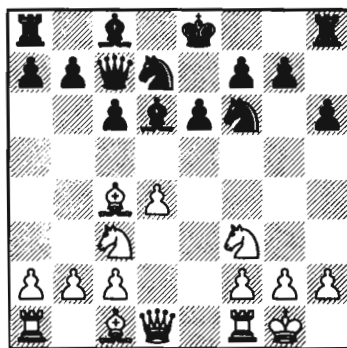


- 31 ... d4!

Again a simple solution. By exchanging his d5 pawn for the pawn at

h3, Black takes play into a won queen ending.

32	♖xd4	♞e1+
33	♞d1	♞xd1+
34	♜xd1	♜xc3+
35	♚b1	♜xh3
36	a4	h5
37	gxf5	♜f5+
38	♚b2	♜xf4
39	♚b3	♜f5
40	♚c4	♚h7
41	♜d2	0-1



Game 2  
Simagin-Smyslov  
Moscow 1963

1	e4	c6
2	d4	d5
3	♘c3	dxe4
4	♘xe4	♘d7
5	♙c4	♘gf6
6	♘g5	e6
7	♘e2	

Fully in the manner of Vladimir Simagin, who was a grandmaster with an original style of play. The main continuation is 7 ♜e2.

7	...	h6
8	♘f3	♙d6
9	0-0	

9 ♙f4 is also not dangerous: 9... ♙xf4 10 ♘xf4 ♜c7 11 ♘d3 b5 12 ♙b3 c5 with complete equality.

9	...	♜c7
10	♘c3	

Usually this knight is played to g3. At c3 it as though provokes Black into trying to seize the initiative, which Smyslov immediately does.

10	...	b5
11	♙d3	b4
12	♘e4	♘xe4
13	♙xe4	♘f6
14	♙d3	

Obviously, without good reason White cannot concede the advantage of the two bishops (14 ♜e2 ♘e4 15 ♜xe4 ♙b7). But now Black implements ...c6-c5, the main strategic idea of the variation.

14	...	0-0
15	♜e2	♙b7
16	♙d2	c5
17	dxc5	♜xc5
18	h3	

Preventing the transition into an endgame after 18 ♙e3 ♜h5, with the threat of exchanges on f3.

18	...	e5
19	♙e3	♜a5
20	♙c4	

If 20 ♘d2 there would have followed 20...e4! 21 ♘c4 (or 21 ♙c4 ♜e5) 21...♜d5 22 ♘xd6 exd3 23 ♜f3 ♜xd6 24 ♜xb7 dxc2 with advantage to Black.

20 ... ♖ac8

21 ♜fd1 ♙b8

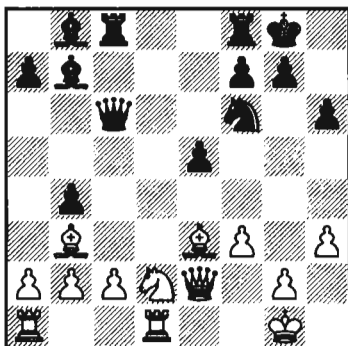
22 ♘d2

If 22 ♙b3 Black has the good reply  
22... ♛c7 with the threat of 23...c4.

22 ... ♛c7

23 ♙b3 ♛c6

24 f3



24 ... e4!

A decision opening of the position,  
clearing the a8-h1 diagonal.

25 fxe4

After 25 f4 there could have  
followed 25...a5 26 a4 ♙a6 27 ♛f2  
♜fd8 28 ♘f1 (28 ♙b6 ♜d6 29 ♙xa5  
e3 30 ♛xe3 ♜e8 31 ♛f2 ♜e2 is  
crushing) 28...♘d5 with a positional  
advantage for Black (Smyslov).

25 ... ♘xe4

26 ♘f1 ♘f6!

It is important to retain control of  
d5.

27 ♜d4 a5

28 ♜ad1 ♙a6!

29 ♛f3

If 29 ♛f2, then 29...a4 is decisive,  
since after 30 ♙d5 ♘xd5 31 ♜xd5

♛xc2 White cannot play 32 ♙c5 on  
account of 32...♜xc5!

29 ... ♛xf3

30 gxf3 ♙e2

31 ♜e1 ♙xf3

32 ♙a4 ♙e5

33 ♜d2 ♙xb2

34 ♜f2 ♙c6

35 ♙xc6 ♜xc6

36 ♘g3 ♜e8

37 ♘f5 ♖h7

38 ♜ef1 ♜xe3

39 ♘xe3 ♙d4

40 ♜e1 ♜e6

0-1

Game 3  
**Bronstein-Petrosian**  
*Moscow 1967*

1 e4 c6

2 d4 d5

3 ♘c3 dxe4

4 ♘xe4 ♘d7

5 c3 ♘gf6

6 ♘g3 e6

7 ♘f3 c5

8 ♙d3 cxd4

9 ♘xd4 ♙e7

Nowadays the more active develop-  
ment 9...♙c5 is normally preferred.

10 0-0 ♘e5

11 ♙c2 ♙d7

12 ♜e1 ♘c6

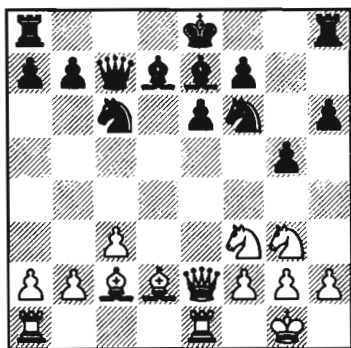
13 ♘f3 ♛c7

14 ♛e2 h6

15 ♙d2 g5!?

One of Petrosian's favourite stra-  
tagems was to delay castling, with the  
aim of saving as much time as

possible for carrying out a concrete plan. Here, with his king for the moment out of reach, he begins an attack on the kingside, but on this occasion, as they say, it is a case of diamond cut diamond. Bronstein cleverly finds a way of keeping the opponent's king in the centre.



### 16 ♖a1!

In Nimzowitsch's terminology, a 'mysterious' rook move: in the event of 16...g4 17 ♘d4 ♘xd4 18 cxd4 it comes alive.

16 ... ♘d5

17 b4 ♘f4

18 ♙xf4 gxf4

19 ♘f5!? ♙f8

Petrosian believes in the impregnability of his position, and the exchange 19...exf5 20 b5 ♗g8 21 bxc6 ♙xc6 22 ♙xf5, which breaks up his pawn structure, does not suit him.

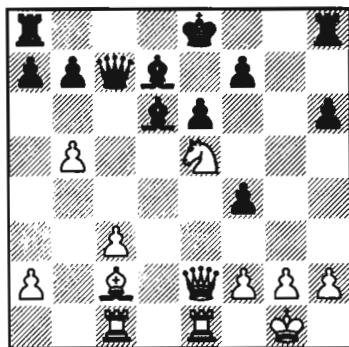
20 b5 ♘e7

21 ♘xe7

21 ♘e5! is more energetic.

21 ... ♙xe7

22 ♘e5 ♙d6



### 23 ♔x17!

White begins a sudden attack, but in surprising fashion Black finds defensive resources.

23 ... ♙x17

24 ♙b3! ♙f6!

Observing these optimistic king manoeuvres, one gains the feeling that hovering over the position is the spirit of the first World Champion Wilhelm Steinitz, who used to assert that the king was capable of defending itself. Black parries the threat of 25 ♙xe6+ ♙xe6 26 ♗xe6+ ♙g7 27 ♗g4+ ♙f8 28 ♗e6.

25 ♗cd1 ♗ad8

26 ♗g4 ♗hg8

27 ♗h5 ♙g7

28 ♙xe6 ♙h7!

After 28...♙xe6 29 ♗xe6 the linear attack of the heavy pieces is decisive.

29 ♗f5+ ♗g6

30 ♗f7+ ♗g7

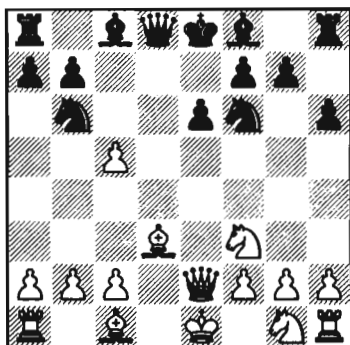
31 ♗f5+

By repeating moves Bronstein acknowledges the brilliance of Petrosian's defence.

31 ... ♖g6  
 32 ♜f7+ ♖g7  
 33 ♜f5+ ♖g6  
 34 ♜f7+ ½-½

Game 4  
**Parma-Smyslov**  
*Lugano Olympiad 1968*

1 e4 c6  
 2 d4 d5  
 3 ♘c3 dxe4  
 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7  
 5 ♙c4 ♘gf6  
 6 ♘g5 e6  
 7 ♜e2 ♘b6  
 8 ♙d3 h6  
 9 ♘f3 c5  
 10 dxc5



10 ... ♘bd7!

The exclamation mark is for Smyslov's invention. Before this only 10...♙xc5 had been played.

11 ♘e5

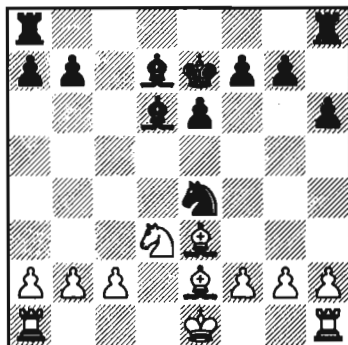
On encountering a new idea, Parma avoids the critical move 11 b4.

11 ... ♘xe5

12 ♜xe5 ♜a5+  
 13 ♙d2 ♜xc5  
 14 ♘f3 ♜xe5+  
 15 ♘xe5 ♙c5  
 16 ♙b5+?!

This assists Black's development. The immediate 16 ♙e2 is better.

16 ... ♘e7  
 17 ♙e2 ♘e4  
 18 ♘d3 ♙d6  
 19 ♙e3 ♙d7



The lost tempo has also cost White the initiative. The game is equal.

20 ♙d4 f6  
 21 ♙f3 ♙c6  
 22 0-0-0 ♜hc8  
 23 h4 b6

If 23...e5 there would have followed 24 ♜he1.

24 ♜he1 ♘c5  
 25 ♙g4 ♙d7  
 26 ♘b1

In the event of 26 ♘b4 Black maintains the balance by 26...♘b3+.

26 ... ♘xd3  
 27 ♜xd3 e5  
 28 ♙xd7 ♘xd7

29 ♖c3 ♔c7

30 ♖ed1 ♖d8

31 ♖e1 e4!?

Black is already fighting for the initiative. If 32 ♖d4 there follows 32...e5!

32 ♖d5 ♖e7

33 c4 ♖xd5

34 ♖xd5 ♖d6

35 h5 ♖e8

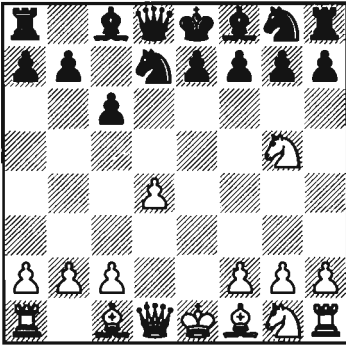
36 ♖d2 ♖c5

½-½



# PART I: 5 ♖g5

- |   |      |      |
|---|------|------|
| 1 | e4   | c6   |
| 2 | d4   | d5   |
| 3 | ♗c3  | dxе4 |
| 4 | ♗xe4 | ♗d7  |
| 5 | ♖g5  |      |



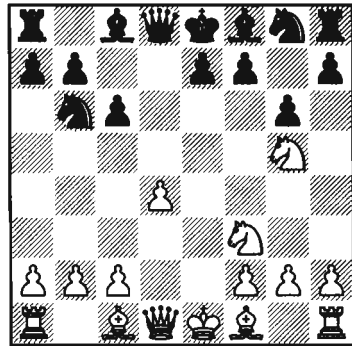
This paradoxical move was first suggested by Igor Zaitsev during preparations with Karpov for the 1980 World Championship Match against Korchnoi. The idea is to regroup the forces with the aim of occupying e5 with a knight, the bishop being developed at d3, and without the loss of time (that occurs after 5 ♗c4). The point is that Black cannot tolerate for long the knight on its aggressive post at g5, and is forced to assist the manoeuvre ♗g5-f3-e5, where it will be supported by the other knight.

The solidity of this manoeuvre is reinforced tactically. Black cannot immediately drive the knight away with 5...h6? on account of the

possible sacrifice 6 ♗e6! ♖a5+ 7 ♗d2 ♗b6 8 ♗d3, and now 8...fxe6? fails to 9 ♗h5+ ♗d8 10 ♗a5, winning the queen (Nunn-Kir.Georgiev, Linares 1988), while if 8...♗gf6 White has the promising piece sacrifice 9 ♗f3 fxe6 10 ♗g6+ ♗d8 11 ♗e5 with a strong attacking position, since it is not easy for Black to develop his pieces.

Black's main replies are 5...♗gf6 (Chapters 1-3) and 5...♗df6 (Chapter 4).

After 5...♗b6 the knight does not participate in the battle for the centre, and this allows White to gain control of the central squares: 6 ♗f3 g6, and now:



(a) 7 c3 ♗g7 8 ♗b3 ♗h6 9 ♗e2 0-0 10 0-0 ♗f5 11 ♖d1 ♗c7 12 g3 ♗d6 with an equal game (Van der Wiel-Karpov, Amsterdam 1988);

(b) 7 ♗d3 ♗g7 8 0-0 ♗h6 9 ♖e1

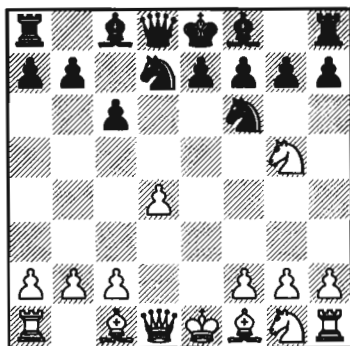
♖c7 10 c3 ♗f5 (or 10...0-0 11 ♗e5!  
 ♗d5 12 ♖f3 ♗f5 13 ♖h3±) 11 ♗e4  
 ♗g4 12 h3 ♗xe4 13 ♜xe4 ♗f6 14  
 ♗f4 ♖d8 15 ♜e2 ♗bd5 16 ♗e5 with  
 a clear positional advantage (Britton-  
 Arkell, British Ch 1992);

(c) 7 h4 (this flank attack is also  
 possible) 7...♗h6 (7...h6 is risky: 8

♗xf7!? ♗xf7 9 ♗e5+ ♗g7 10 h5!) 8  
 h5 ♗g4 9 hxg6 hxg6 10 ♜xh6! ♗xh6  
 (10...♜xh6? is bad on account of 11  
 ♗xf7! ♗xf7 12 ♗e5+) 11 ♗xf7 ♗xf7  
 12 ♗e5+ ♗g7 13 ♖xg4 ♖d6 14 f4!  
 ♜af8 15 ♗d2 ♜f6 16 0-0-0 with a  
 dangerous attack for the sacrificed ex-  
 change (Ulibin-Lokotar, USSR 1988).

# 1: 5...♞g6 6 ♔d3 e6 7 ♞1f3 ♔d6 8 0-0

- |   |      |      |
|---|------|------|
| 1 | e4   | c6   |
| 2 | d4   | d5   |
| 3 | ♞c3  | dxe4 |
| 4 | ♞xe4 | ♞d7  |
| 5 | ♞g5  | ♞gf6 |



The main and most natural reply.

## 6 ♔d3

6 ♔c4 is considered in Chapters 5-8 under the move order 5 ♔c4 ♞gf6 6 ♞g5.

6 ♞1f3 e6 7 ♔d3 transposes into the main line. It should be mentioned that, as in many other instances examined below, here too 6...h6 is risky. For example, Demarre-Andruet, France 1989, continued 7 ♞e6 fxe6 8 ♔d3 ♞a5+ 9 ♔d2 ♞h5 10 ♞e2 g5 11 g4! ♞xg4 12 ♞e5 ♞dxe5 13 dxe5 ♞g8 14 0-0-0 with a very strong attack for White.

## 6 ... e6

Without first completing his development, it is practically impos-

sible for Black to drive the knight away painlessly, since White is able to develop a dangerous attack by sacrificing his knight on e6:

6...h6?! 7 ♞e6! ♞a5+ 8 ♔d2 ♞b6 9 ♞f3 fxe6 10 ♔g6+ ♔d8 11 0-0 c5?! (more cautious is 11...♞c7 12 ♞e1 b6 13 c4 ♔b7 14 ♞e5 ♞xe5 15 dxe5 ♞d7 16 ♔f4±, Malinin, Poleschuk) 12 c4 cxd4 13 ♞xd4 e5 (13...♞xd4 14 ♔a5+) 14 c5! ♞xc5 15 ♔a5 and White won (Tall-Oll, Riga 1986).

6...c5?! 7 ♞1f3 cxd4 (7...♞b6 8 ♞e5!) 8 0-0 h6?! (the drawbacks to 8...♞b6 were revealed by Tal-Meduna, Germany 1989: 9 ♔c4 e6 10 ♞e1 ♔e7?! 11 ♞xf7! ♞c7 12 ♔xe6 ♞c5 13 ♔c4 with a clear advantage to White, but even after the superior 10...♔b4 11 ♞xf7! ♔xe1 12 ♞xh8 ♔b4 13 ♞xd4 he still has the advantage) 9 ♞e6! ♞b6 10 ♞e1 ♞c5 11 ♞xc5 ♞xc5 12 ♞xd4 a6 13 c3 e6 14 ♔f4 ♔e7 15 ♔c2 ♔d7 16 ♞f5! with a strong attack (Tseshkovsky-Khalifman, Tashkent 1987).

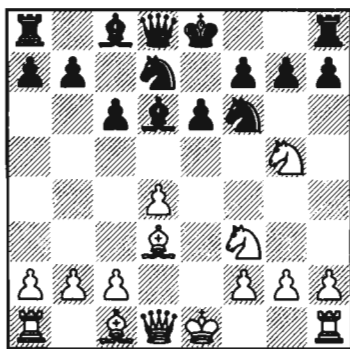
6...♞c7 7 ♞1f3 (7 ♞e2 is insufficient for an advantage: 7...e6 8 ♔f4 ♔d6 9 ♞d2 ♔xf4 10 ♞xf4 0-0 11 0-0-0 e5=, Nunn-Tal, Skelleftea 1989, although 9...e5! was more vigorous) 7...h6 8 ♞e6 fxe6 9 ♔g6+ ♔d8 10 0-0 ♞d6! (10...b6? 11 g3! ♔b7 12 ♔f4±, De Firmian) 11 ♞e2 (interesting is 11 c4 c5 12 ♞e5 ♞xe5

13 dxe5 ♖xd1 14 ♜xd1+ ♔c7 15 ♙f4!, when it is not apparent how Black can complete his development without losing material, Malinin, Poleschuk) 11...d5 12 ♗e5 ♗xe5 13 dxe5 ♜b4 14 c4 ♗b6 15 ♜d1+ ♙d7 16 ♙e3 with advantage to White (Lauk-Lokotar, Eesti 1992).

6...♗b6 7 ♗1f3 h6?! (7...♙g4 is better: 8 h3 ♙xf3 9 ♗xf3±) 8 ♗xf7! ♗xf7 9 ♗e5+ ♗g8 10 ♙g6 ♙e6 11 0-0 ♗c4 12 f4 ♗d6 13 f5 with an attack.

The fianchetto plan 6...g6 weakens the kingside, allowing White to make use of his knight at g5, e.g. 7 ♗1f3 ♙g7 8 ♜e2 0-0 9 h4 h6 (the attack is also unpleasant after 9...h5 10 ♗e5 ♗xe5 11 dxe5 ♗d5 12 e6 f5 13 g4!) 10 h5! ♗xh5 11 g4 ♗hf6 12 ♗e6! fxe6 13 ♜xe6+ ♜f7 14 ♙xg6 ♜f8 15 g5 ♗d5 16 gxh6 ♗e5 17 ♙h7+ 1-0 (W.Watson-Meduna, Prague 1992).

7 ♗1f3 ♙d6



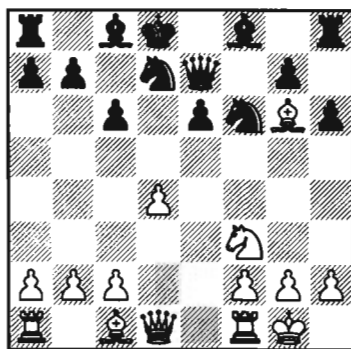
Black must keep a close watch on the attacking mechanism of the ♙d3 and ♗g5, which may go into

operation in the event of the weakening move ...h7-h6:

7...h6 8 ♗xe6, and now:

(a) 8...fxe6 9 ♙g6+ ♗e7, when all the same the king has to pass through the d8 square, and White develops his forces, maintaining an attack with 10 ♙f4 (also possible is 10 0-0 ♜c7 11 ♗e5! ♗xe5 12 ♙f4 ♗fd7 13 ♜h5 ♗d8 14 dxe5 ♙e7 15 ♜ad1 ♜f8 16 ♙f7±, Malinin, Poleschuk, but if White plays 11 ♜e1, then after 11...♗d8! Black can defend – cf. Game 5, Wolff-Granda Zuniga, New York 1992) 10...♜a5+ 11 c3 ♗d8 12 0-0 ♙e7 13 ♜e1 ♗f8 14 ♙d3 ♙d7 15 ♗e5 ♗c8 16 b4 ♜b6 17 ♗f7 and White's initiative fully compensates for the sacrificed piece (McDonald-Summerscale, London 1994);

(b) 8...♜e7 9 0-0 fxe6 10 ♙g6+ ♗d8, when we consider:



(b1) 11 ♙f4, when:

(b11) 11...♜b4 12 a3 ♜xb2? 13 ♜e2 ♗d5 14 ♙d2 and Black was in difficulties (Geller-Meduna, Sochi 1986), but 12...♜b6 13 c4 ♙e7 14 c5

♖xb2 was more accurate, and therefore 12 ♖e2!± would have been stronger (Rogers);

(b12) 11...b5 (to prevent c2-c4) was played by Kasparov in his famous game with the computer *Deep Blue* (New York 1997), but after 12 a4! ♕b7 13 ♖e1 ♗d5 14 ♕g3 ♖c8 15 axb5 cxb5 16 ♖d3 ♕c6 17 ♕f5 exf5 18 ♖xe7 ♕xe7 19 c4 he resigned;

(b13) 11...♗d5! 12 ♕g3 ♖b4 13 ♖e1 (or 13 ♖e2 ♕e7 14 c4 ♗5b6 15 ♗e5 ♖f8 16 a3 ♖a4 17 ♗f7+ ♖xf7 18 ♕xf7 ♖xc4 and Black defends, Gallagher-Miralles, Geneva 1988) 13...♕e7 14 ♖e2 ♕f6 15 c4 ♗e7 16 a3! ♖b3 17 ♕d3 ♗f5? (correct was 17...♗f8 18 ♖ad1 ♕d7 19 ♗e5 ♕e8, successfully defending) 18 ♕xf5! exf5 19 ♖e6! ♖b6 20 c5 ♗xc5 21 ♖d6+! with a winning position (Chandler-Hübner, Biel 1987);

(b2) 11 c4! ♖d6 12 ♖e2 ♖c7 13 ♖d1! ♕d6 14 ♗e5 ♖f8 15 ♕f4 with a complete bind (Leko-Bakhtadze, Las Palmas 1995) – *Game 6*.

7...♖c7?! 8 ♖e2 h6 9 ♕g6! (a hint that Black's f7 is inadequately defended) 9...hxg5 10 ♕xf7+ ♖d8 (after 10...♖xf7 11 ♗xg5+ ♖g6 12 ♖d3+ the king is drawn out of its shelter) 11 ♗xg5 ♗b6 12 g3! (weaker is 12 ♕xe6?! ♖xh2! 13 0-0 ♖h5 as in Van der Wiel-Karpov, Amsterdam 1987) 12...♕d7 13 ♕xe6 ♕e8 14 ♕f5 ♕f7 15 ♕f4 ♖e7 16 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 17 0-0 ♕g8 18 b3! and White creates dangerous threats (Van der Wiel).

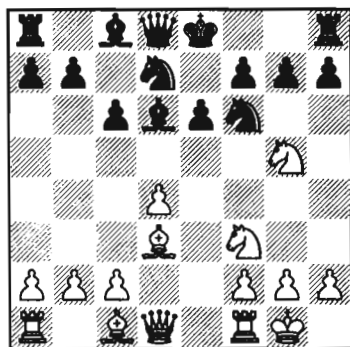
7...♕e7 8 ♖e2 (the practically unexplored 8 ♗xf7!± also comes into

consideration: 8...♖xf7 9 ♗g5+ ♖g8 10 ♗xe6 ♕b4+ 11 ♖f1! ♖e7 12 ♗c7 ♗b6 13 ♗xa8 ♗xa8 14 c3 with the better chances for White) 8...h6 9 ♗xe6 fxe6 10 ♕g6+ ♖f8 11 0-0 (not 11 ♖xe6? ♖a5+ 12 ♕d2 ♖d5±) 11...♗b6 (or 11...♕d6 12 ♗e5 ♖e7 13 f4 ♖g8 14 ♕d2 ♗f8 15 ♕f7+ with a strong attack, Nadianian-Sedrakian, Armenia 1992) 12 ♗e5! with a dangerous initiative for White:

(a) 12...♖g8 13 c4! (13 a4?! ♕d7 14 a5 ♗bd5=, Z.Almasi-Kumaran, Kopavogur 1994) 13...♕d7 14 ♕e3 ♕e8 15 ♕c2 with dangerous threats (Z.Almasi);

(b) 12...♖c7 13 c4 ♕d7 14 ♕f4 ♖c8 15 ♖ac1 (weaker is 15 ♖fe1 ♕e8 16 ♕xe8 ♖xe8 17 ♖d3 ♖h5! 18 ♗g6+ ♖f7 19 ♗xh8+ ♖xh8 20 ♖b3 ♖d8±, Chandler-Arkell, London 1988) 15...♕e8 16 ♖c3 ♗bd7 17 ♖g3 ♗xe5 18 dxe5 ♗d7 19 ♖g4 with an attack for White (Karpov).

8 0-0



This move restricts White's possibilities, although even here

accurate play is demanded of Black. The main continuation 8 ♖e2 is considered in Chapters 2 and 3.

8 ... h6  
9 ♘e4 ♘xe4  
10 ♗xe4 0-0

The plan with queenside castling comes seriously into consideration:

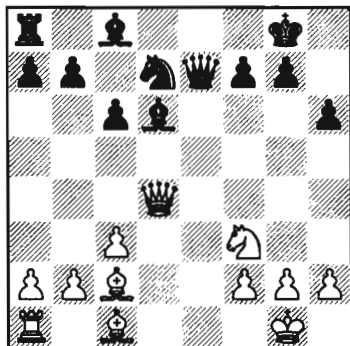
10...♗f6 11 ♗d3 b6 12 ♖e1 ♗b7 13 b3 ♖c7 14 ♗b2 c5 15 dxc5 ♖xc5 16 ♗xf6 gxf6 17 ♗e4 0-0-0 with equal chances (Emms-Tisdall, Gausdal 1996).

10...♖c7 11 ♖e1 b6 12 b3 ♗b7 13 ♗b2 0-0-0 14 ♖e2 ♗b8 15 ♗d3?! c5 16 dxc5 ♗xc5 and Black stands better (Emms-Speelman, Britain 1996).

11 c3 e5

White also retains a solid initiative after 11...c5 12 ♗c2 ♖c7 13 ♖e1 ♗d8 14 h3 ♗f6 15 ♖e2 cxd4 16 ♗xd4 ♗h2+ 17 ♗h1 ♗f4 18 ♗b5 ♖b8 19 a4! (Kamsky-Karpov, Tilburg 1991).

12 ♗c2 ♖e8  
13 ♖e1 exd4  
14 ♖xe8+ ♖xe8  
15 ♖xd4 ♖e7



Although the position looks quiet, Black has a hard job to equalise, since he is behind in development. Thus if 15...♖e2 White has the unpleasant manoeuvre 16 ♗d2! ♗c5 17 ♖h4 ♖e7 18 ♗g5, while after 15...♗c5 Black has to reckon with an attack on h6: 16 ♖h4 ♗f8 17 ♗xh6! gxh6 18 ♖e1 (Gallagher-Huss, Switzerland 1994).

16 ♗f4 ♗xf4  
17 ♖xf4 ♗f8

Weaker is 17...♗f6?! 18 ♖e1 ♗e6 19 ♗b3.

18 ♖e1 ♗e6  
19 ♗d4 ♖e8

Or 19...♗d8 20 h4 with the initiative for White (Kasparov-Karpov, Amsterdam 1988) – *Game 7*.

Smirin-Khalifman (Moscow 1989) now continued 20 g3 ♖d8 21 ♗d1 ♗h3! 22 ♗f3 ♖e7 23 ♖d6 ♖e2 24 ♖d3 ♖e6 25 ♗b3 ♖f6 with equal chances.

More energetic was 20 ♗xe6!? ♗xe6 21 ♖e4 with a slight but enduring advantage for White (Khalifman).

Game 5  
Wolff-Granda Zuniga  
New York 1992

1 e4 c6  
2 d4 d5  
3 ♗d2

In recent years this move has been played much more often than 3 ♗c3. Since all the same Black has no better reply than 3...dxe4, White effectively excludes the plan with 3...g6,

followed (after e4-e5) by the attack on his centre by ...c6-c5, which can now be neutralised by c2-c3. It is worth mentioning that this plan, introduced by grandmaster Gurgenzidze, was successfully employed by Petrosian against Fischer in the 1970 'Match of the Century'.

3 ... dxe4  
4 ♗xe4 ♗d7  
5 ♙d3 ♗g6  
6 ♗g5 e6  
7 ♗1f3 h6

A committing move, provoking the following knight sacrifice.

8 ♗xe6 fxe6  
9 ♙g6+ ♖e7  
10 0-0

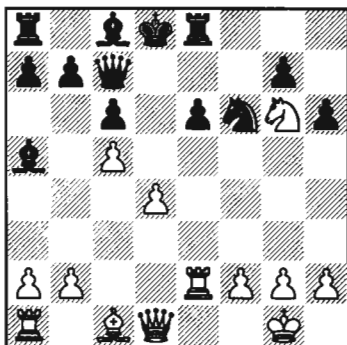
10 ♙f4, controlling the h2-b8 diagonal, is stronger – cf. the analysis.

10 ... ♖c7  
11 ♙e1 ♗d8  
12 c4

White is aiming for a complete bind. After 12 ♙xe6 ♙d6 Black threatens 13... ♗f8 and so White is forced to retreat.

12 ... ♙b4  
13 ♙e2 ♗f8  
14 ♗e5 ♗xg6  
15 ♗xg6 ♙e8  
16 c5 ♙a5?

As Granda Zuniga rightly indicated, Black should have cleared his own pieces that were obstructing his king: 16... ♖f7! 17 ♗e5 ♖h5 18 ♗c4 b5 19 ♗e5 ♙d7 20 a4 bxa4 21 ♙xa4 a5 22 f3 ♙e7, and White's attack does not compensate for the sacrificed piece.



17 ♖a4 ♗d5  
18 ♗e5 ♙d7  
19 a3 b5  
20 ♖c2 ♖b8  
21 ♖h7 ♙c7  
22 ♖xg7 ♙xe5  
23 ♙xe5 ♗c8  
24 ♙xh6 ♖c7  
25 ♙d2 ♗b7  
26 a4?!

The three pawns fully compensate for the knight, and their rapid advance by 26 h4!? would have given White very real chances.

26 ... a5  
27 ♖g3 ♙g8  
28 ♖d3 b4  
29 ♙ae1 ♙h8  
30 ♙g5 ♙ag8  
31 h4 ♖c8  
32 g3 ♖f8  
33 f4 ♖f7  
34 ♗f2 ♗e7  
35 ♙xe7 ♖xe7  
36 ♖f3 ♖f6  
37 ♙1e3 ♙g7  
38 ♙d3 ♙e8

39 ♖de3 ♘f7  
40 f5?

An oversight in time trouble. After 40 d5! cxd5 41 ♛e2 White would have broken through to the enemy king.

40 ... ♘h5  
41 ♖xe6

White has to reconcile himself to the loss of the exchange, since 41 ♛f4? fails to 41...♞g4.

41 ... ♛xe6  
42 ♖xe6 ♘xf3  
43 ♜xf3 ♞hg8  
44 f6 ♞xg3+  
45 ♜f4 ♞8g4+  
46 ♜e5 ♞xh4  
47 ♞e7+ ♜a6  
48 f7 ♞f3  
49 ♞e6 ♞xf7  
50 ♞xc6+ ♜a7  
51 d5 ♞e7+  
52 ♜d6 ♞eh7  
0-1

Game 6  
Leko-Bakhtadze  
Las Palmas 1995

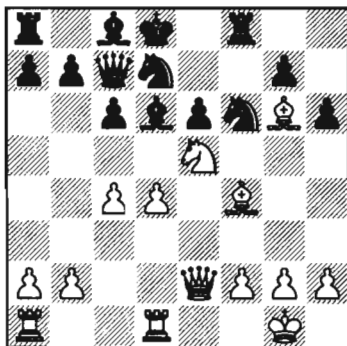
1 e4 c6  
2 d4 d5  
3 ♟c3 dxe4  
4 ♟xe4 ♟d7  
5 ♟g5 ♟gf6  
6 ♘d3 e6  
7 ♟1f3 h6  
8 ♟xe6 ♛e7  
9 0-0 fxe6  
10 ♘g6+ ♜d8  
11 c4!?

A new move. Before this 11 ♘f4 used to be played.

11 ... ♛d6

It is not easy for Black to develop his pieces. After the more 'active' 11...♛b4 Leko was intending 12 ♛e2 ♘d6 13 ♟e5 ♞f8 14 ♘d2!, including his bishop in the attack with gain of time.

12 ♛e2 ♛c7  
13 ♞d1 ♘d6  
14 ♟e5 ♞f8  
15 ♘f4



15 ... ♘xe5?!

After this it is not possible to free the king.

15...b6 was better, not fearing 16 c5 ♘xe5, while 16 ♟f7+ can be met by 16...♞xf7 17 ♘xd6 ♛xd6 18 ♘xf7 ♟f8 or 18...♜e7.

16 dxe5 ♟g8  
17 ♘g3 ♛b6  
18 ♛g4! c5

Or 18...♜c7 19 ♛xe6 c5, when 20 ♞d6 is again decisive.

19 ♞d6 ♛xb2  
20 ♞ad1 ♜c7



21 ♕xe6 ♗df6  
22 ♜d7+! 1-0

22 ♗xe6

Game 7  
Kasparov-Karpov  
Amsterdam 1988

1 e4 c6  
2 d4 d5  
3 ♗d2 dxe4  
4 ♗xe4 ♗d7  
5 ♗g5 ♗gf6  
6 ♘d3 e6  
7 ♗1f3 ♘d6  
8 0-0

One of the first famous clashes between the twelfth and the thirteenth World Champions takes place on a reserve field. The main continuation is 8 ♕e2.

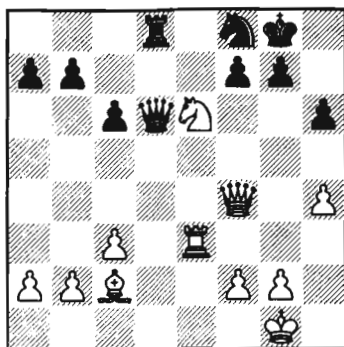
8 ... h6  
9 ♗e4 ♗xe4  
10 ♘xe4 0-0

As shown in the analysis, the plan with queenside castling can also be considered.

11 c3! e5  
12 ♘c2 ♜e8  
13 ♜e1 exd4  
14 ♜xe8+ ♕xe8  
15 ♕xd4 ♕e7  
16 ♘f4 ♘xf4  
17 ♕xf4 ♗f8  
18 ♜e1 ♘e6  
19 ♗d4 ♜d8

After 19...♜e8 White can maintain a slight advantage by 20 ♗xe6!? ♗xe6 21 ♕e4.

20 h4 ♕c5  
21 ♜e3 ♕d6



22 ... fxe6?!

White's symbolic advantage now assumes real proportions, and it is instructive to follow the World Champion's technique in capitalising on it. After the natural 22...♗xe6 23 ♕e4 ♗f8 Black would have maintained the status quo.

23 ♕g4 ♕d2  
24 ♘b3 ♗h8  
25 ♜e2 ♕d6  
26 g3 a6  
27 ♗g2 ♜e8  
28 ♜e3 ♜e7  
29 ♜f3 ♜d7  
30 ♕h5 ♕e7  
31 ♕e5

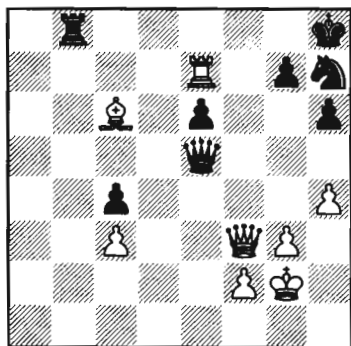
The key to Black's position is now apparent – it is the f7 square, and by subtle manoeuvring Kasparov has added a spatial advantage to his positional one. The invasion on f7 is yet to come.

31 ... ♜d8  
32 a4 b5  
33 ♕e4 ♕c7

34	♖f4	c5
35	♚f3	♚d6
36	axb5	axb5
37	♖f7	♖b8
38	♖a7	b4
39	♙c2	bxc3
40	bxc3	♚e5
41	♖f7	

First 41 c4!? is also useful.

41	...	♘h7
42	♚g4	♙g8
43	♖e7	♘f8
44	♚f3	c4
45	♙e4	♙h8
46	♙c6!	♘h7



47 ♚f7

The decisive queen invasion. After the exchange of rooks the difference

in the strength of the minor pieces becomes more apparent in view of the e6 pawn.

47	...	♘f8
48	♖e8	♖xe8
49	♙xe8	♘h7
50	♙d7	♘f6
51	♙xe6	h5
52	♙xc4	♚e4+

After 52...♚xc3 53 ♚f8+ ♙h7 54 ♚c5! in view of the threat of 55 ♙g8+ Black is again forced to concede space.

53 ♙h2 ♙h7?!

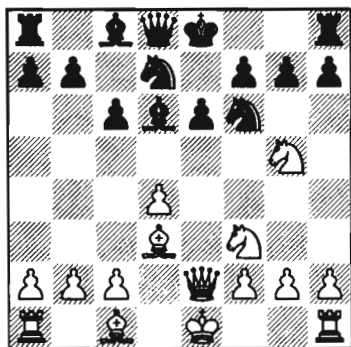
53...♚f3 is more active, although after 54 ♚f8+ ♙h7 55 ♚c5 the defence would have merely been prolonged.

Now, however, White combines threats to the enemy king with the advance of his c-pawn.

54	♚e6	♚f3
55	♚e1	♘g4+
56	♙g1	♚c6
57	♙d3+	g6
58	♚e7+	♙h6
59	♙e4	♚b6
60	♚f8+	♙h7
61	♚f7+	♙h6
62	c4	♚a6
63	c5	1-0

## 2: 8 ♔e2 h6 9 ♘e4 ♘xe4 10 ♔xe4 ♘f6

1	e4	c6
2	d4	d5
3	♘c3	dxe4
4	♘xe4	♘d7
5	♘g5	♘gf6
6	♙d3	e6
7	♘1f3	♙d6
8	♔e2	



White prepares queenside castling and takes control of the e5 square, restricting the possibility of Black freeing his queen's bishop by means of ...e6-e5.

8	...	h6
9	♘e4	

Here the knight sacrifice no longer works: 9 ♘xe4?! fxe6 10 ♙g6+ ♔e7 11 0-0 ♘f8 12 ♙d3 ♙d7 13 ♘e5 ♔e8 14 f4 ♔d8 15 c4 ♔c7 16 ♙d2 ♔c8, and Black successfully evacuates his king (Arnason-Ostenstad, Torshavn 1987).

9	...	♘xe4
---	-----	------

10	♔xe4
----	------

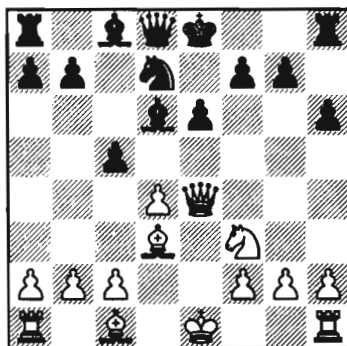
After the capture on e4 with the queen Black is no longer able to carry out the freeing move ...e6-e5 and is obliged to switch to ...c6-c5.

10 ♙xe4 is harmless: 10...♔c7 11 ♙d2 b6 12 0-0-0 ♙b7 13 c4 0-0-0 14 ♙c3 ♔he8 15 ♔he1 ♘f6 16 ♙c2 c5 with equal chances (Roiz-Speelman, Oviedo 1992).

10	...	♘f6
----	-----	-----

The other fashionable continuation 10...♔c7 is considered in Chapter 3.

Also deserving of a special mention is 10...c5, a move which Karpov, keenly seeking defensive resources, has recently employed several times:



(a) 11 ♙d2 ♔c7 (weaker is 11... ♘f6 12 ♙b5+ ♙d7 13 ♔xb7 ♔b8 14 ♙xd7+ ♘xd7 15 ♔a6±, Psakhis-Meduna, Trnava 1988) 12 0-0 c4 13 ♙e2 ♘f6, and after 14 ♔h4 ♙d7 15 ♘e5 ♙xe5 16 dxe5 ♔xe5 17 ♙f3 0-0

3 ♖xb7 ♜ab8! 19 ♕f4 ♜b5 20 ♗xb8 ♜xb8 21 ♕f3 ♜xb2 Black's activity fully compensates for his slight material deficit (Z. Almasi-arпов, Tilburg 1996);

(b) 11 0-0 ♟f6 (11...♜c7 12 ♜g4 ♟f8, Illescas-Karpov, Dos Hermanas 1997, leads to a position considered in chapter 3, p.43), and now:

(b1) 12 ♕b5+ ♟e7 13 ♜e2 ♜c7 14 ♗c5 ♜xc5 (14...♕xc5 15 ♟e5±) 15 ♗e3 ♜c7 16 ♕d4 ♜d8 (Topalov-arпов, Dos Hermanas 1997), and though in the end Black managed to defend himself, White's chances look better;

(b2) 12 ♜h4 (a more natural move, practically ruling out the possibility of lack of castling kingside in view of the threatened bishop sacrifice at h6) 2...cxd4 (at the tournament in Dortmund, 1997, Karpov played 12...♜c7 against Ivanchuk, and although after 3 ♜e1 ♕d7 14 ♕g5 ♕e7 15 dxc5 ♗xc5 16 ♟e5± he eventually gained a draw, his position was very dubious) 3 ♜e1! ♕d7 14 ♟xd4 (we must also mention the game Shabalov-Gulko, SA Ch 1996, where after 14 ♕d2 ♗c7 15 ♜ad1 0-0-0 16 ♜xd4 ♜c5 17 ♗e3 ♜xd4 18 ♕xd4 White obtained the better ending) 14...♜a5 15 ♕e3, and Black was unable to cope with the resulting problems (Lautier-Karpov, Biel 1997) – *Game 8*.

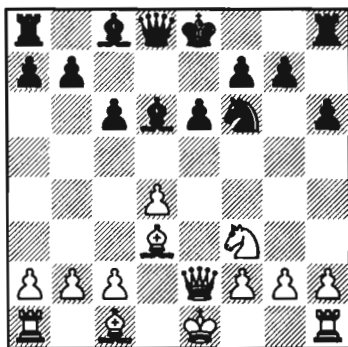
### 11 ♜e2

The aggressive 11 ♜h4 is also sometimes played:

(a) attempts to simply – 11...♜a5+ r 11...♟d5 12 ♜xd8+ ♟xd8 13 c3

♟e7) 12 ♕d2 ♜h5 13 ♜xh5 ♟xh5 14 ♟e5 0-0 15 0-0-0 c5 16 g4 ♟f6 17 g5! give White the better ending (Hector-Hodgson, London 1991);

(b) 11...♟e7!, when the threat of ...g7-g5 forced White to sacrifice a pawn by 12 ♟e5 (nothing is achieved by 12 ♟d2 g5 13 ♜h3 e5 or 12 ♕f4 ♕b4+) 12...♕xe5 13 dxe5 ♜a5+ 14 c3 ♜xe5+ 15 ♕e3 b6 (15...c5 16 0-0-0 g5 17 ♜g3! ♜xg3 18 hxg3±) 16 0-0-0 g5 with sharp play (Kamsky-Karpov, Dortmund 1993) – *Game 9*.



### 11 ... b6

Black mobilises his queenside, preparing for the possibility of removing his king there. After kingside castling he risks coming under an attack in view of the weakening h6, with the white g-pawn being assigned the role of a battering-ram:

11...c5 12 dxc5 ♕xc5 (12...♜a5+!? 13 ♕d2 ♜xc5±) 13 ♕d2 0-0 (13...♜b6 14 0-0-0!? ♕xf2 15 ♜hf1 ♕c5 16 ♟e5 with a dangerous initiative for the pawn) 14 0-0-0 ♜c7

(14...b5 15 g4 ♘d5 16 ♖hg1 ♗c7 17 ♘e5 b4 18 g5 hxg5 19 ♖xg5 f5 20 ♖dg1±, Benjamin-Arkell, Reykjavik 1990) 15 g4 e5 (15...♘xg4 16 ♖df1±) 16 g5 hxg5 17 ♖xg5 e4! 18 ♖xe4 ♖e8 19 ♖xf6 ♗f4+ 20 ♘d2 ♗xf6 21 ♗h5 ♖d4 22 c3 ♖xe4! 23 ♘xe4 ♗f4+ with a double-edged game (Smirin-Kharitonov, Svedlovsk 1987).

11...♗c7 12 ♖d2 0-0 13 0-0-0 c5 14 g4 ♘d5 15 g5 ♘f4 16 ♖xf4 ♖xf4+ 17 ♖b1 cxd4 18 ♖hg1 e5 19 gxh6 ♖xh6 20 ♘xe5 with the better chances for White (Malishauskas-Oll, Vilnius Zonal 1993).

In this last variation Black can also consider a fashionable method of defence, whereby he 'sacrifices' castling for the sake of activity in the centre: 11...♗c7 12 ♖d2 b6, and now:

(a) 13 ♘e5 c5!? 14 ♖b5+ ♖e7 15 c3 ♖b7 16 0-0 ♖hd8 17 f4 ♘e4 18 ♖e3 ♖f8 19 ♖ae1 ♖g8 20 ♗g4 cxd4! (20...♘f6?! 21 ♗g3±, Kamsky-Anand, Dos Hermanas 1996) 21 cxd4 f5! 22 ♗g6 ♖d5 with an equal game (Kasparov);

(b) 13 0-0-0 ♖b7 14 ♘e5, transposing into variation 2.1.

12 ♖d2 ♖b7

13 0-0-0

White can also consider the preparatory 13 ♘e5 ♗c7 (13...c5 14 dxc5 ♖xc5 15 f4±) 14 f4!, deferring castling:

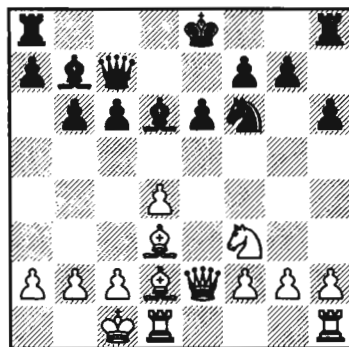
(a) 14...c5 15 dxc5 (if 15 ♖b5+?! ♖e7=) 15...♗xc5 (the alternatives 15...♖xc5 16 0-0-0 and 15...♖xe5 16 fxe5 ♘d7 17 cxb6 axb6 18 ♖c3 favour White) 16 0-0-0 0-0 17 ♖b1

♖fd8 18 ♖he1 ♖ac8 19 g4 ♖xe5 20 fxe5 ♘e4! 21 ♖c1! (White loses after 21 ♖xe4? ♖xe4 22 ♗xe4 ♖d4 23 ♗e2 ♗xc2+ 24 ♖a1 ♖cd8) 21...♗b4 22 ♖a1 ♘c5 23 c3, and after the necessary prophylaxis it transpired that White's attack was the more dangerous (Tiviakov-Adams, Wijk aan Zee 1996);

(b) 14...0-0-0 15 0-0-0 c5 16 dxc5 ♖xc5 17 ♖a6 ♖d5 18 ♖xb7+ ♗xb7 19 ♖e3 ♖xe3+ 20 ♗xe3 ♖hd8 21 ♗c3+ ♖c5 22 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 23 ♖d1+ ♖e8 24 ♗g3, and the dominating position of White's knight at e5 gives him the advantage (Leko-Bacrot, Erevan Olympiad 1996);

(c) 14...0-0 15 0-0-0 c5 16 ♖hg1 cxd4 17 g4 with an attack.

13 ... ♗c7

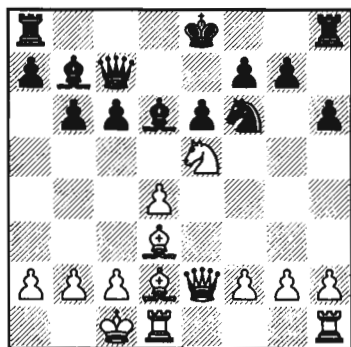


The two sides have almost completed the mobilisation of their forces, although Black has not yet determined the position of his king. Here three practically equivalent continuations are encountered: 14 ♘e5 (2.1), 14 ♖he1 (2.2) and 14 ♖b1 (2.3).

2.1 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 c3 dxe4  
4 c4 d7 5 g5 gxf6 6 d3  
e6 7 d1f3 d6 8 e2 h6 9 e4  
cxe4 10 e4 f6 11 e2 b6  
12 d2 b7 13 0-0-0 e7)

### 14 e5

White immediately occupies e5, and if he should succeed in consolidating the position of his knight, he may be able to develop an unpleasant initiative.



For example: 14...0-0-0 15 f4! c5 16 dxc5 e5 17 b1 b8 18 h1 5 19 h3 h4 20 a6! xa6 21 xa6 f2 22 f1 g3 23 a4 and White's centralized knight, controlling the weakened light squares in the black position, gives him the advantage (Dermian-Spiridonov, Lugano 1989).

### 14 ... c5

An equally energetic reply. Black dislodges the support from under the knight and hopes to slip away with his ing via f8.

15 b5+ e7

16 dxc5

Maintaining the momentum. After 16 e4 f4 h8 17 h1 e5 the game is level.

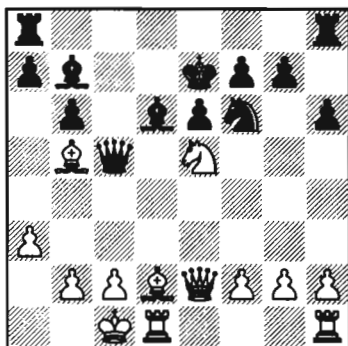
### 16 ... xc5

After 16...e5? 17 cxb6 c5 18 e5! e5 19 b4+ the king succumbs.

### 17 a3

Again a pseudo-sacrifice of the knight (17...e5? 18 e5 e5 19 b4+) – it is important to detain the king in the centre. In the event of 17 e3 h8 18 d4 c7 19 h1 f8! 20 c3 a6! 21 d3 b5 (21...e5!? 22 xc5+ xc5 23 f4 b5 is also interesting) 22 b1 b4 23 c4 e5 the king is safe and Black has adequate counterplay (Leko-Karpov, Dortmund 1995).

The tactical 17 e6 (17...e6? 18 b4!) is parried by 17...ac8! 18 e3 e5 19 xb7 c7 20 a6 e5 21 xc5+ xc5 (Leko).



### 17 ... c7

17...a5 weakens Black's queenside pawn pair: 18 e3 h8 (18...d5 19 h1 hc8 20 f3 f8 21 b1

♗c7 22 ♙d4 ♚d8 23 ♗f2±, Ivanchuk-Karpov, Monaco 1996) 19 ♙d4 ♗c7 20 ♘c4 ♙c5 21 ♙e5 with strong pressure for White (Anand-Karpov, Monaco Blind 1996).

18 ♙f4 ♘d5

The reinforcement 18...♚hd8 is too late: 19 ♚d4 ♙d5 (19...♗f8 20 ♗b1 a6 21 ♚xd6! ♚xd6 22 ♘c4 e5 23 ♗xe5 axb5 24 ♗xd6+ ♗xd6 25 ♘xd6 ♙xg2 26 ♚g1 ♙h3 27 ♘xb5 and White wins a pawn, Ye Jiangchuan-Schlosser, Groningen 1996) 20 ♚hd1 ♗f8 21 ♗b1 with advantage to White – 22 c4 followed by ♘xf7 is threatened (Sutovsky-Nisipeanu, Columbia 1996).

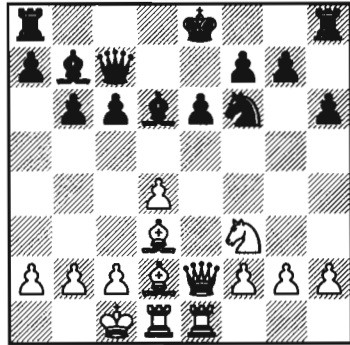
But in the recent game Istratescu-Nisipeanu (Bucharest 1997) after 18...♙d5!? 19 ♘c6+ (doubling rooks on the d-file should perhaps have been considered) 19...♗f8 20 ♙xd6+ ♗xd6 21 ♘e5 ♗c5 22 f4 g6 23 ♚hf1 h5 (to prevent g2-g4) Black gained equal chances.

The eighth game of the Kamsky-Karpov match (Elista 1996) now continued 19 ♙g3 ♚hd8 20 ♚d4! with active piece play for White – cf. *Game 10*.

2.2 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 dxe4 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7 5 ♘g5 ♘gf6 6 ♙d3 e6 7 ♘f3 ♙d6 8 ♗e2 h6 9 ♘e4 ♘xe4 10 ♗xe4 ♘f6 11 ♗e2 b6 12 ♙d2 ♙b7 13 0-0-0 ♗c7)

14 ♚he1

White calmly strengthens his position.



14 ... 0-0-0

14...0-0 looks risky, but in *Game 11* (Kamsky-Karpov, 12th Match Game, Elista 1996) Black succeeded in parrying White's attack: 15 g4 c5 16 g5 hxg5 17 ♘xg5 ♙f4! 18 h4?! ♚ad8! with a good game. Ftacnik recommends as better 18 dxc5 bxc5 19 ♚g1, and if 19...♙xh2 20 f4! ♙xg1 21 ♚xg1 ♚fd8 22 ♗h2 with an attack for White.

15 ♙a6 b5!

Forestalling White's possible activity associated with c2-c4 after 15...♙xa6 16 ♗xa6+ ♗b8 17 ♗e2, although even here Black's defensive resources are quite adequate:

(a) 17...♘d5 18 c4 ♘f4 19 ♗f1 and White's chances are only slightly preferable (A.Sokolov-Karpov, Bel-fort 1988) – *Game 12*;

(b) 17...♚he8 18 ♗b1 ♘d7 19 c4 e5 20 dxe5 ♘xe5 and Black equalises (Kuczynski-Sapis, Polish Ch 1989).

15...♚he8 16 ♘e5 ♙xe5 17 dxe5 ♘d5 18 ♙xb7+ ♗xb7 is more passive, and here in Woda-Sapis

(Polish Ch 1989) White could have maintained his initiative with 19 ♖g4!

16 ♙xb7+ ♚xb7

17 ♚b1 ♚a8

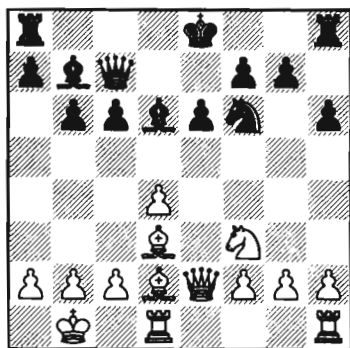
And now:

18 ♚c1 ♜b8 19 c4 bxc4 20 ♜xc4 ♜b5 21 ♜d3 ♜hb8 with counterplay for Black (McDonald-Hodgson, British Ch 1990);

18 ♙c1 ♜b7 19 ♘d2 ♙b4 20 c3 ♙d6 21 ♘b3 ♘d5 with equal chances (Chandler-Adams, Blackpool 1990).

2.3 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 dxe4 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7 5 ♘g5 ♘gf6 6 ♙d3 e6 7 ♘f3 ♙d6 8 ♜e2 h6 9 ♘e4 ♘xe4 10 ♜xe4 ♘f6 11 ♜e2 b6 12 ♙d2 ♙b7 13 0-0-0 ♜c7)

14 ♚b1



White is not in a hurry to disclose his plans, since it is not easy for Black to free himself.

14 ... 0-0-0

Recently 14...♜d8, whereby Black does not hurry with castling, has become fashionable. He can success-

fully oppose the plan of positional pressure:

(a) 15 c4 0-0, and now:

(a1) 16 g4, when the open nature of the position allows Black counterplay: 16...♙f4! 17 ♘e5 ♙xd2 18 ♜xd2 (18 ♜xd2 ♜xd4 19 ♙h7+ ♘xh7 20 ♜xd4 c5?) 18...♜xd4 19 ♜g1 c5 20 g5 ♘e4 with a complicated game (Z.Almasi);

(a2) 16 ♙c3 ♜fe8 (if 16...♜e7?! White attacks with 17 g4 c5 18 ♜hg1!, Z.Almasi-Adams, Groningen 1995, but 16...c5 is possible – 17 ♜he1 ♜fe8 18 dxc5 ♙xc5 19 ♘e5, Aseev-Epishin, Russia 1997, and now Aseev suggests 19...♚f8!? 20 ♘g4 ♘xg4 21 ♜xg4 f5 22 ♜g6 ♜f7 with an equal position) 17 ♘e5 (here too 17 g4 is premature: 17...c5 18 ♜hg1 ♙xf3 19 ♜xf3 cxd4 20 ♙d2 ♘d7 21 ♜e4 g6! with a sound position for Black – Karpov) 17...c5 18 dxc5 ♙xc5 19 f3 a5 20 ♙c2 ♙a6 with a double-edged game (Z.Almasi-Karpov, Groningen 1995);

(b) 15 ♜he1 0-0 16 ♘e5 (16 g4?! ♙f4 17 ♘e5 ♜xd4 18 ♙xf4 ♜xf4 19 h4? c5?, Adams-Speelman, New York 1995) 16...c5 17 f4 cxd4 18 g4 ♘d5 19 g5 hxg5 20 ♜h5 f5 21 ♘g6 ♘f6 22 ♜xg5 ♘h7 23 ♜h5 ♜f6 24 ♜g1 ♙e4 with equal chances (Kasparov-Epishin, Moscow 1995);

(c) but after 15 ♜hg1! (preparing an attack in the event of Black castling) 15...c5 16 dxc5 ♜xc5 17 a3 Black encounters serious difficulties:

(c1) 17...0-0?! 18 g4 ♜d5 19 g5! ♜xf3 (19...hxg5? 20 ♙xg5 ♜xf3 21 ♜xf3 ♙xf3 22 ♙xf6 g6 23 ♜de1±) 20



gxf6 g6 (if 20...♗xf6 White attacks with 21 ♖c3 e5 22 f4!) 21 ♖xh6 ♖xh2 22 ♖h1 ♗xe2 23 ♖xe2 ♖xd1+ 24 ♖xd1 ♖c8 25 f3 with an attack for White (Topalov-Ivanchuk, Las Palmas 1996);

(c2) 17...a5 18 ♖e3 ♗c7 19 ♖b5+ ♗e7 20 ♗d4! with the better game for White (Timman-Leko, Groningen 1996) – *Game 13*.

A practically unexplored alternative is 14...♖c8!? 15 ♖hg1 c5 16 dxc5 ♗xc5 17 ♖c3 0–0 18 ♖d4 ♗c7 19 g4 ♗d5 20 g5 h5 21 ♗e5 ♗f4 with equal chances (Wolff-Orlov, USA Ch 1995).

### 15 ♖a6

15 c4 can be met by 15...c5, although here too after 16 ♖c3 White's chances are better:

(a) 16...♖he8 17 ♖he1 ♖b8 18 g3 ♖a8 19 ♖c2 a6 20 dxc5 ♖xc5 21 ♗e5 (A.Sokolov-Spraggett, match (9), Saint John 1988);

(b) 16...♖hg8 17 ♖he1 ♖b8 18 ♖c2 cxd4 19 ♗xd4 a6 20 g3 (Svidler-Vyzhmanavin, Novgorod 1995).

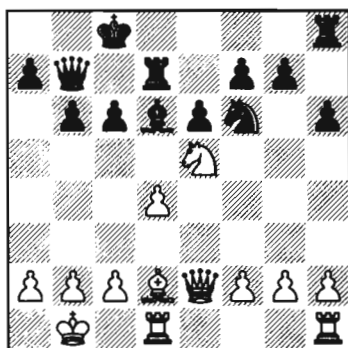
### 15 ... ♖d7

Here (with the c-file already cleared for White's rook) 15...b5?! is too weakening: 16 ♖xb7+ ♗xb7 17 c4 bxc4 18 ♖c1 ♖b8 19 ♖xc4 ♖a8 20 ♖hc1 ♖hc8 21 ♗e5 ♖xe5 22 ♗xe5 ♗d7 23 f3 ♖b6 24 ♖a5 ♖b7 25 b3 and White's chances are better (Chandler-Speelman, Hastings 1988/9).

### 16 ♖xb7+ ♗xb7

### 17 ♗e5

If 17 c4 ♖hd8 18 ♖c3 ♖b8 19 ♖he1 c5 with equal chances (Kudrin-Kamsky, New York 1989).



Now after 17...♖xe5 18 dxe5 ♗g8 19 c4 ♗e7 20 ♖c3 ♖hd8 21 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 22 ♖d1 ♖xd1+ 23 ♗xd1 c5 24 ♗d6 White has a significant advantage in the ending (Thorsteinnsson-Kamsky, Reykjavik 1990).

### Game 8

### Lautier-Karpov

Biel 1997

- |    |      |      |
|----|------|------|
| 1  | e4   | c6   |
| 2  | d4   | d5   |
| 3  | ♗c3  | dxe4 |
| 4  | ♗xe4 | ♗d7  |
| 5  | ♗g5  | ♗gf6 |
| 6  | ♖d3  | e6   |
| 7  | ♗f3  | ♖d6  |
| 8  | ♗e2  | h6   |
| 9  | ♗e4  | ♗xe4 |
| 10 | ♗xe4 | c5   |

This basically thematic attack on the centre has the drawback that Black remains behind in development, and it is not easy for him to secure the position of his king.

- |    |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|
| 11 | 0–0 | ♗f6 |
|----|-----|-----|

12 ♖h4 cxd4

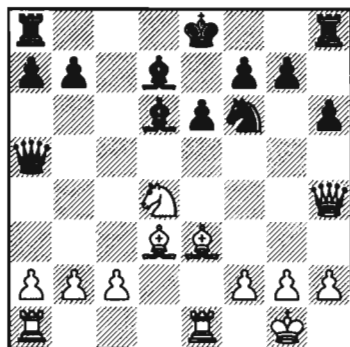
13 ♖e1!

A useful developing move, putting the black king under 'X-ray' (White gains the possibility of ♖d4-f5).

13 ... ♗d7

14 ♖xd4 ♖a5

15 ♗e3



15 ... ♗f8?!

It would have been more natural to expect of Karpov his 'patent' 15... ♗e7, but here this loses outright to 16 ♖f5+.

Since later Black's defence involves trying to exchange queens, it would have been simpler to do this immediately by 15... ♗h5 16 ♖xh5 ♖xh5 17 ♖f5 ♗f8 18 ♖ad1 ♖f6 (18... 0-0-0 19 ♗xa7 ♖c7!? is also interesting, threatening 20... exf5 as well as to cut off the bishop's retreat by 20... b6) 19 ♗f4 0-0-0 20 ♖d6+ ♗xd6 21 ♗xd6, and after 21... ♗c6 or 21... ♖d5 Black has an inferior but defensible ending.

Castling immediately 15... 0-0-0! 16 ♖b3 ♖c7 17 ♗xa7 g5 18 ♖h3 e5

19 ♖f3 or after 15... g5 16 ♖h3 0-0-0 17 ♖b3 ♖a4 18 ♗d4 e5 19 ♖f3 leaves his kingside irreparably weakened.

16 ♗f4 ♗xf4

16... e5 can be met by the simple 17 ♖b3 ♖b4 18 ♗g5 ♖xh4 19 ♗xh4, with an obvious advantage in the endgame.

17 ♖xf4 ♖c8

18 ♖f3!

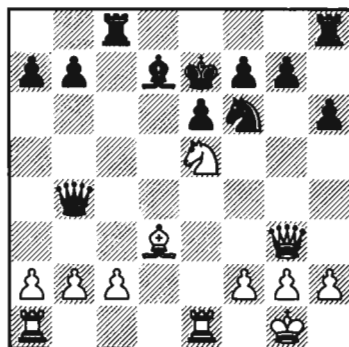
The main theme of White's strategy is occupation of e5.

18 ... ♗e7

19 ♖g3 ♖b4

Or 19... ♖h5? 20 ♖e5!

20 ♖e5



20 ... ♗g5?!

There was no justification for such an optimistic sortie. 20... ♖hg8, avoiding weakening the kingside, was more solid.

21 c4! ♖hd8?!

If Black is going to suffer, then he might at least have some material in compensation: 21... ♖xb2 22 ♖ab1 ♖xa2 23 ♖xb7 ♖hd8 24 ♖h3! ♖a6

(not 24...♗d2? or 24...♗a5? because of 25 ♘g6+!) 25 ♜bb1! h5 26 ♗e3 g4 27 ♜a1 ♗b6 28 ♗h6! ♙e8 29 ♗g7, and the attack continues (Lautier).

22 ♗h3 h5?

This leads to loss of material. It was essential to return with 22...♜h8, although after 23 b3 White has a clear advantage.

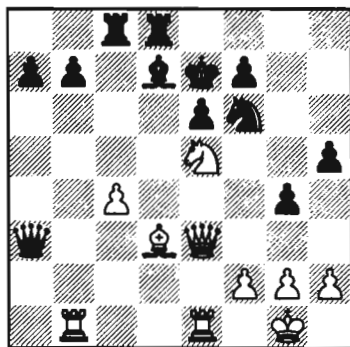
23 ♗e3 g4

24 a3!

The initiative is more important than a pawn; 24 ♗xa7 b6 would have left Black with some hopes.

24 ... ♗xb2

25 ♜ab1 ♗xa3



26 ♘xf7!

By the threat of a discovered check (26...♘xf7 27 ♙g6+) White exposes the enemy king. Black's attempt to buy him off by giving up the exchange proves fruitless.

26 ... ♗c5

27 ♘xd8 ♗xe3

28 ♜xe3 ♙xd8

29 ♜xb7 a5

30 ♜a7 ♜c5

31 f4 gxf3

32 ♜xf3 ♘e8

33 ♜f7 ♘c7

34 ♜h7 ♙e8

35 ♙f2 ♙c8

36 ♜h8 ♙d7

After 36...♙b8 White wins by 37 ♜xc7.

37 ♙e3 e5

38 ♙e2 ♙g6

39 ♙xh5 ♙f5

40 ♙e2 ♙e6

41 h4 ♙c6

42 ♜h6 ♙d7

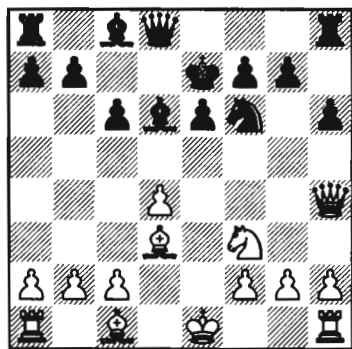
43 h5 1-0

### Game 9

**Kamsky-Karpov**  
*Dortmund 1993*

1 e4 c6  
2 d4 d5  
3 ♘c3 dxe4  
4 ♘xe4 ♘d7  
5 ♘g5 ♘gf6  
6 ♙d3 e6  
7 ♘1f3 ♙d6  
8 ♗e2 h6  
9 ♘e4 ♘xe4  
10 ♗xe4 ♘f6  
11 ♗h4 ♙e7!

Nowadays the appearance of Karpov's king at e7 is nothing unusual, but at the time this move created the impression of an exploding bomb. All the participants in the tournament left their games and gathered around the board where the future finalists of the FIDE World Championship in Elista were playing.



- |    |       |       |
|----|-------|-------|
| 12 | ♞e5   | ♙xe5  |
| 13 | dxe5  | ♜a5+  |
| 14 | c3    | ♜xe5+ |
| 15 | ♙e3   | b6    |
| 16 | 0-0-0 | g5    |
| 17 | ♜a4   | c5    |
| 18 | ♞he1  |       |

White has a strong initiative for the sacrificed pawn, but Karpov is accustomed to defending such situations.

- |    |     |      |
|----|-----|------|
| 18 | ... | ♟d7  |
| 19 | ♜a3 | ♞hd8 |
| 20 | g3  |      |

If 20 f4 gxf4 21 ♙d4 Black holds the position by 21...♜g5 22 ♞e5 ♜h4.

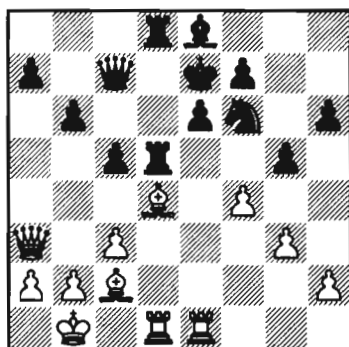
- |    |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|
| 20 | ... | ♜c7 |
| 21 | ♙d4 | ♙e8 |
| 22 | ♞b1 | ♞d5 |

Karpov considers the strongest to be 22...♙c6! 23 ♙e5 ♜d7 24 ♙c2 ♜b7 when the initiative passes to Black. Now, however, Kamsky finds a way of adding fuel to the fire.

- |    |     |      |
|----|-----|------|
| 23 | f4! | ♞ad8 |
| 24 | ♙c2 |      |

The outcome of the game is

decided to a certain extent on the d-file, Black's control of which assists his king, as is seen in the following variation: 24 ♙e5 ♜c6! 25 c4 ♞5d7 26 ♜c3 ♞g4 27 fxg5 hxg5 28 ♞f1 ♞d4 and Black parries the threats (Karpov).



- |    |       |      |
|----|-------|------|
| 24 | ...   | ♞5d6 |
| 25 | ♙f6+  | ♞xf6 |
| 26 | fxg5+ | hxg5 |
| 27 | ♞xd6  | ♞xd6 |
| 28 | c4    | ♞e7  |
| 29 | ♜e3   | f6   |
| 30 | h4    | gxf4 |
| 31 | gxf4  | ♜d7  |
| 32 | ♜h6   | e5?  |

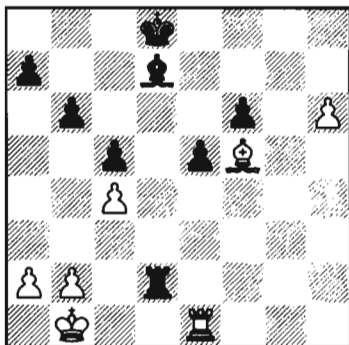
Activity on the d-file was more appropriate: 32...♞d2! 33 ♜g7+ ♙f7 34 h5 ♜d4, counterattacking (Karpov). Now, however, the h-pawn becomes very dangerous.

- |    |      |     |
|----|------|-----|
| 33 | h5   | ♜g4 |
| 34 | ♜h7+ | ♞d8 |
| 35 | h6   | ♞d2 |
| 36 | ♜f5! |     |

This is where the difference in the placing of the queens tells. In view of

the threat of the h-pawn's further advance, Black has to agree to their exchange.

36 ... ♗xf5  
37 ♖xf5 ♖d7



38 ♖g6?

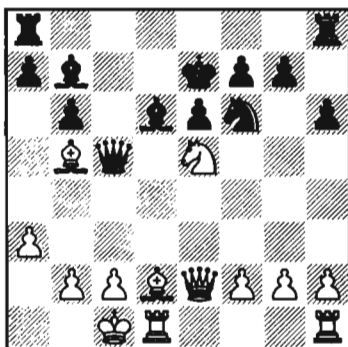
After 38 ♖c1! in view of the threatened pin Black would have nothing better than 38...♖d4, but then after 39 ♖xd7 he would have to give up a piece, since 39...♖xd7 40 ♖d1 or 39...♗xd7 40 ♖h1 allows the h-pawn to queen. Now, however, it comes under the firm control of the rook, and matters are decided by Black's pair of connected pawns.

38 ... ♖h2  
39 h7 ♗e7  
40 ♖d3 ♖e6  
41 ♖g1 f5  
42 ♖g7+ ♗f6  
43 ♖xa7 e4  
44 ♖e2 f4  
45 b3 f3  
46 ♖d1 ♖f5  
47 ♗c1 ♖xh7  
48 ♖b7 ♗e5

49 ♖xb6 ♖xa2  
0-1

Game 10  
Kamsky-Karpov  
Match (8), Elista 1996

1 e4 c6  
2 d4 d5  
3 ♘d2 dxe4  
4 ♘xe4 ♘d7  
5 ♘g5 ♘gf6  
6 ♖d3 e6  
7 ♘f3 ♖d6  
8 ♗e2 h6  
9 ♘e4 ♘xe4  
10 ♗xe4 ♘f6  
11 ♗e2 ♗c7  
12 ♖d2 b6  
13 0-0-0 ♖b7  
14 ♘e5 c5  
15 ♖b5+ ♗e7  
16 dxc5 ♗xc5  
17 a3



The knight offer is a pseudo-sacrifice: 17...♗xe5? 18 ♗xe5 ♖xe5 19 ♖b4+.

17 ... ♖c7  
18 ♙f4 ♟d5

As mentioned in the analysis, after 18...♞hd8 19 ♞d4 ♙d5 (19...♞f8 20 ♞xd6) 20 ♞hd1 ♞f8 21 ♞b1 White threatens 22 c4 followed by ♟xf7 (Sutovsky-Nisipeanu, Columbia 1996).

However, 18...♙d5!? (Istratescu-Nisipeanu, Bucharest 1997) is a possible improvement.

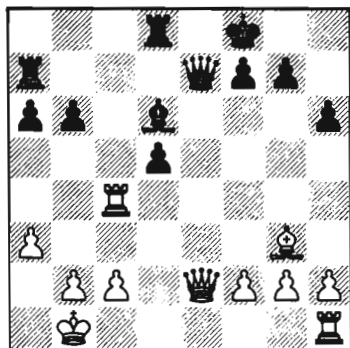
19 ♙g3 ♞hd8  
20 ♞d4!

A subtle manoeuvre. White not only threatens to double rooks, but also eyes the weak c6 square.

20 ... ♞f8  
21 ♞b1 a6  
22 ♞c4

Continuing the battle for c6, whereas after the retreat of the bishop Black would have consolidated the position of his knight at d5 by 22...b5.

22 ... ♖e7  
23 ♟c6 ♙xc6  
24 ♙xc6 ♞a7  
25 ♙xd5 exd5



Black has to agree to an isolated pawn, since if he interposes 25...♙xg3? White too can interpose 26 ♙xe6! ♙xf2 27 ♞f4 ♖e8 28 ♙xf7!

26 ♙xd6 ♖xd6  
27 ♞d4 b5  
28 ♖d3 ♞g8  
29 g3 ♖e6  
30 ♞d1 ♞ad7  
31 h4 ♞d6  
32 ♞d2

One is unlikely to outplay Karpov with prophylaxis, and therefore the vigorous 32 g4!? ♖f6 33 ♖g3 should have been considered, with some initiative.

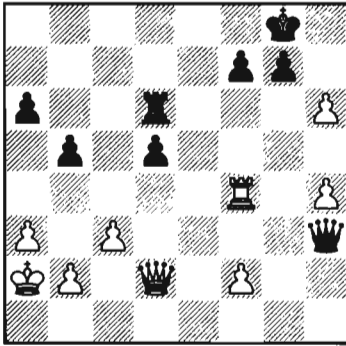
32 ... ♖e1+  
33 ♞a2 ♖e7  
34 ♖f3 ♖e6  
35 ♞e2 ♖c8  
36 ♖d3 ♞c6  
37 ♞b1 ♞e6  
38 ♞e3 ♖c6  
39 ♖d2 ♞xe3  
40 ♖xe3

Nothing is promised by 40 fxe3 ♞e8 41 ♞xd5 ♞xe3 42 ♞d8+ ♞e8.

40 ... ♖e6  
41 ♖d2 ♞d6  
42 g4 ♖f6  
43 g5 ♖f3  
44 ♞a2

After the exchanges 44 gxh6 ♞xh6 45 ♞xd5 ♞xh4 46 ♞d8+ ♞h7 the game is equal.

44 ... ♖f5  
45 c3 ♖f3  
46 ♞f4 ♖h3  
47 gxh6



47 ... ♗e6!  
48 ♗d4

If 48 hxg7 White has to reckon with 48...d4+ 49 ♖b1 dxc3, when 50 ♗xc3 fails to 50...♗d1+ 51 ♖c2 ♗e2+ 52 ♖b3 ♗d3, winning the queen.

48 ... ♗xh6  
49 ♗f5 ♗e6  
50 ♗e5 ♗d7  
51 ♖a1 f6  
52 ♗e3 ♗c6  
53 h5 ♗c4  
54 ♗b6 d4  
55 ♗d3 ♗f5  
56 ♗xd4 ♗xd4  
57 cxd4

57 ♗xd4 ♗xh5 58 ♗d6 ♗f3 59 ♗xa6 ♗d1+ 60 ♖a2 ♗d5+ would have led to equality.

57 ... ♗xf2  
58 ♗e6+ ♖f8  
59 ♗d6+ ♖f7  
60 ♗d7+ ♖f8  
61 ♗d6+ ♖f7  
62 ♗d7+  
½-½

Game 11  
Kamsky-Karpov  
Match (12), Elista 1996

1 e4 c6  
2 d4 d5  
3 ♘d2 dxe4  
4 ♘xe4 ♘d7  
5 ♘g5 ♘gf6  
6 ♗d3 e6  
7 ♘f3 ♗d6  
8 ♗e2 h6  
9 ♘e4 ♘xe4  
10 ♗xe4 ♘f6  
11 ♗e2 ♗c7  
12 ♗d2 b6  
13 0-0-0 ♗b7  
14 ♗he1

Kamsky switches to another of the three main alternatives.

14 ... 0-0

This is considered risky, as White's attack has something to latch on to – the h6 pawn. The main continuation is 14...0-0-0.

15 g4 c5

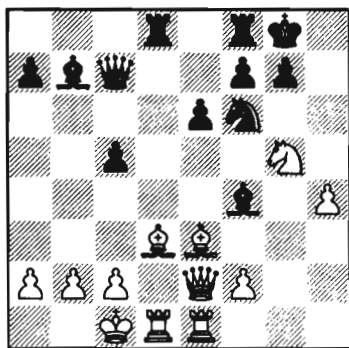
One is unlikely to find volunteers willing to play 15...♘xg4? 16 ♗g1 f5 17 h3 ♘f6 18 ♗xh6.

16 g5 hxg5  
17 ♘xg5 ♗f4!  
18 h4?!

This natural move in fact reduces the potential of White's attack, as Black is able to make an energetic counterattack in the centre. 18 dxc5 bxc5 19 ♗g1! was stronger.

18 ... ♗ad8!  
19 dxc5 bxc5  
20 ♗e3

Now if 20 ♖g1 Black has 20...c4  
21 ♙xc4 ♜xd2 22 ♜xd2 ♙xd2+ 23  
♙xd2 ♜d8+ 24 ♚e1 ♜h2 with the  
better chances.



20 ... ♜d4!

A pretty move, indirectly attacking  
the h4 pawn, and if 21 h5 Black was  
planning to seize the initiative by  
21...♜e5 22 ♖g1 c4!

21 ♖g1 ♙xe3+

22 fxe3 ♜xh4

23 ♜df1 ♜e5

24 ♜f2 ♜h6

Karpov defends, but it was already  
the time to launch a counterattack:  
24...♜h2! Now 25 ♜xf6? fails to  
25...♜xe3+! 26 ♚b1 gxf6, 25 ♜e1  
♜d8 with the threat of 26...♜xd3 is  
unpleasant for White, while after 25  
♜g3 ♜xg3 26 ♜xg3 ♟d7 Black is a  
pawn up in the endgame.

25 ♖g3 ♙e4

26 ♜fg1 g6

27 ♜f1 g7

27...♜h1 28 ♜xh1 ♙xh1 came into  
consideration, with the better chances.

28 ♜xf6+

White's attack has petered out, and  
he considers it best to go into a  
slightly inferior ending.

28 ... ♜xf6

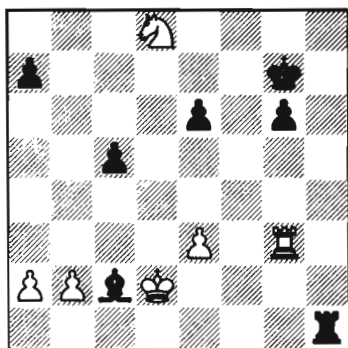
29 ♜xf6 ♙xd3

30 ♜xf7+ ♜xf7

31 ♟xf7 ♜h1+!

32 ♟d2 ♙xc2

33 ♟d8



33 ... ♜h2+

33...♙f5! 34 e4 ♜h8! was stronger,  
and now in the event of 35 ♟b7 ♙xe4  
36 ♟xc5 ♜h2+! 37 ♟c3 ♜c2+ Black  
has real winning chances (Vasyukov).

34 ♟c3 ♟f6

35 ♟b7 ♙f5?!

In time trouble Karpov misses the  
superior 35...♙b1 36 ♜f3+ ♟e5 37  
♜f1 ♙e4! 38 ♟xc5 ♜c2+ 39 ♟b4  
♜xb2+ (Vasyukov).

36 ♟xc5 ♜c2+

37 ♟d4 ♜d2+

38 ♟c3 ♜c2+

39 ♟d4 e5+

40 ♟d5 ♜d2+

41 ♟c4 ♜c2+

42 ♟d5 ♜d2+



43 ♔c4 g5  
44 e4!

This move, restricting the bishop, saves the game, since the win of the e4 pawn by 44...♗d4+ 45 ♔c3 ♙xe4 merely turns out to be an exchange – 46 ♗g4!

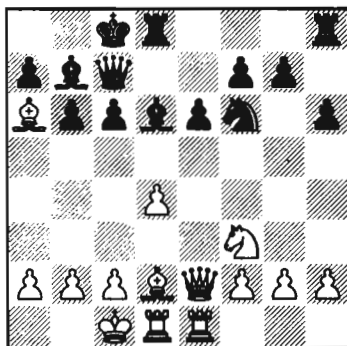
44 ... ♙c8  
45 ♔c3! ♗d1  
46 ♗f3+ ♔g7  
47 ♘d3 g4  
48 ♗g3 ♔f6  
49 ♘f2! ♗c1+  
50 ♔d2 ♗a1  
51 ♘xg4+ ♙xg4  
52 ♗xg4 ♗xa2  
53 ♔c3 ♗a4  
54 b4 ½–½

### Game 12

A.Sokolov-Karpov  
Belfort 1988

1 e4 c6  
2 d4 d5  
3 ♘d2 dxe4  
4 ♘xe4 ♘d7  
5 ♘g5 ♘gf6  
6 ♙d3 e6  
7 ♘f3 ♙d6  
8 ♗e2 h6  
9 ♘e4 ♘xe4  
10 ♗xe4 ♘f6  
11 ♗e2 b6  
12 ♙d2 ♙b7  
13 0–0–0 ♗c7  
14 ♗he1 0–0–0  
15 ♙a6

15 c4 is considered more promising.



15 ... ♙xa6

Here 15...b5 is better, hindering White's play with c2-c4.

16 ♗xa6+ ♔b8  
17 ♗e2 ♘d5  
18 c4 ♘f4  
19 ♗f1 ♘g6

This retreat is forced, as 19...g5 20 g3 g4 21 ♗e4 gxf3 22 ♙xf4! leads to an advantage for White.

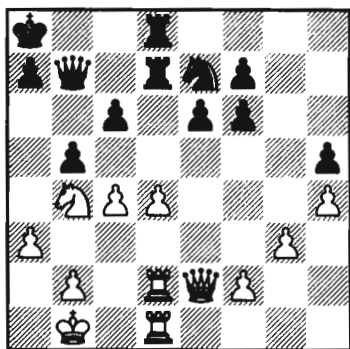
20 g3 ♙e7  
21 h4 h5  
22 ♗e2 ♗d7  
23 ♙g5 ♙f6  
24 ♗d2 ♗hd8  
25 ♗ed1 ♗b7  
26 ♔b1 ♔a8  
27 a3 ♗a6

27...b5 28 cxb5 ♗xb5 29 ♗e4 has its drawbacks in the form of the weak c6 pawn, but now all Black's kingside pawns are weak, and the one at h5 is virtually doomed.

28 ♙xf6 gxf6  
29 ♘e1 ♘e7

Preparing ...b6-b5, which was not good immediately because of 30 d5.

30 ♟c2 b5  
31 ♟b4 ♜b7



32 d5!

This breakthrough gives the game a new turn!

32 ... cxd5

White has the advantage after both 32...c5 33 dxe6 ♜xd2 34 ♜xd2 ♜xd2 35 ♜xd2 cxb4 36 exf7 ♜e4+ 37 ♜c2 ♜xc2+ 38 ♟xc2 ♟g6 39 cxb5, and 32...exd5 33 cxd5 ♟xd5 34 ♟xd5 ♜xd5 35 ♜d4 (Sokolov).

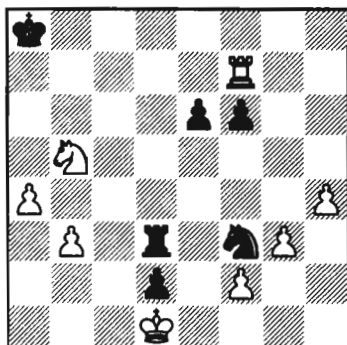
33 cxb5 ♜c8?

Now White wins a pawn for free, but also after 33...♟g6 34 a4 the h5 pawn causes concern.

34 ♜xh5 ♟g6  
35 ♜e2 ♟e5  
36 b3 ♜dc7  
37 ♜c2 ♜xc2  
38 ♟xc2 a6  
39 ♟d4 axb5  
40 ♟xb5 ♜b6  
41 a4 ♜c5  
42 ♜d2 ♟f3  
43 ♜c1 ♜xc1+  
44 ♜xc1 ♜d8

As shown by Sokolov, Black could have regained the pawn by 44...♟d2+ 45 ♟b2 ♜xc1 46 ♟xc1 ♟xb3+ 47 ♟c2 ♟c5, but only at the cost of allowing the h-pawn to advance – 48 h5 ♟d7 49 h6 ♟f8 50 ♟d6, and the f7 pawn is lost.

45 ♜c7 d4  
46 ♜xf7 d3  
47 ♟c1 d2+  
48 ♟d1 ♜d3



Black has done everything possible, but the pawn has been firmly blockaded, and if necessary White's rook can control it from the rear.

49 ♟c7+ ♟b8  
50 ♟a6+ ♟a8  
51 ♟c7+ ♟b8  
52 ♟xe6 ♜xb3  
53 ♜f8+ ♟a7  
54 ♜d8 ♜b1+  
55 ♟e2 ♜e1+  
56 ♟xf3 d1♜+  
57 ♜xd1 ♜xd1

Despite winning the exchange, the ending is hopeless for Black.

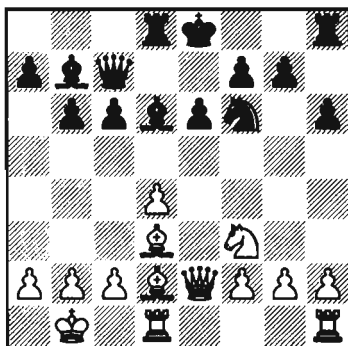
58 ♟f4 ♜f1

- 59 f3 ♖b6  
 60 ♗g7 ♖c6  
 61 ♗h5 ♖d6  
 62 ♗xf6 ♖e7  
 63 ♗h5 ♖f7  
 64 g4 ♖g6  
 65 ♗g3 ♜a1  
 66 h5+ ♖f7  
 67 g5 ♜xa4+  
 68 ♖f5 ♜a5+  
 69 ♖g4 ♜a4+  
 70 f4 ♜b4  
 71 ♗f5 ♜b1  
 72 h6 ♜g1+  
 73 ♖h5 ♜f1  
 74 ♗d6+ ♖e6  
 75 ♖g6 1-0

Game 13  
 Timman-Leko  
 Groningen 1996

- 1 e4 c6  
 2 d4 d5  
 3 ♗d2 dxe4  
 4 ♗xe4 ♗d7  
 5 ♗g5 ♗gf6  
 6 ♖d3 e6  
 7 ♗1f3 ♗d6  
 8 ♜e2 h6  
 9 ♗e4 ♗xe4  
 10 ♜xe4 ♗f6  
 11 ♜e2 b6  
 12 ♖d2 ♖b7  
 13 0-0-0 ♜c7  
 14 ♖b1 ♜d8

In recent times this move has become fashionable, as after 14...0-0-0 15 ♖a6 White is guaranteed a slight but enduring advantage.



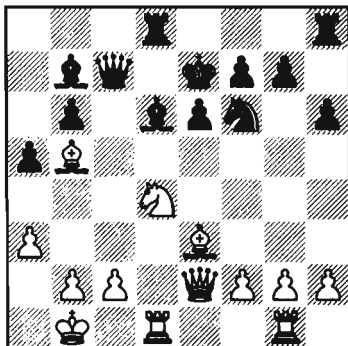
15 ♜hg1!

Deterring Black from castling king-side.

- 15 ... c5  
 16 dxc5 ♜xc5  
 17 a3 a5

In the game Topalov-Ivanchuk (Las Palmas 1996) Black risked castling, but after 17...0-0?! 18 g4 ♜d5 19 g5 ♜xf3 20 gxf6 he ended up in a difficult position.

- 18 ♖e3 ♜c7  
 19 ♖b5+ ♖e7  
 20 ♗d4!



20 ... ♖xh2?

Over-optimistic, but White also has the advantage after 20...♖e5 21 f4.

21 ♘f5+ ♔f8

22 ♖xd8+ ♗xd8

23 ♖d1 ♗c7

24 ♖d4!

Now all of White's pieces join the attack, and he is also threatening to cut off the retreat of the black bishop to h2.

24 ... e5

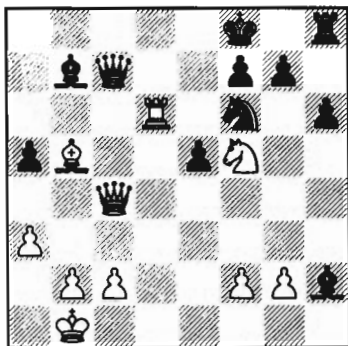
If 24...exf5 there follows 25 ♖xf6 gxf6 26 ♖d7 ♗e5 27 ♖xb7 with the threats of ♖c4 and ♗h5.

25 ♖xb6! ♗xb6

26 ♖d6 ♗c7

27 ♗c4!

After this diverting move there follows a decisive infiltration by the rook.



27 ... ♗b8

28 ♖b6 ♗c8

29 ♖xb7 ♗xb7

30 ♘d6 ♗e7

31 ♗c8+ ♘e8

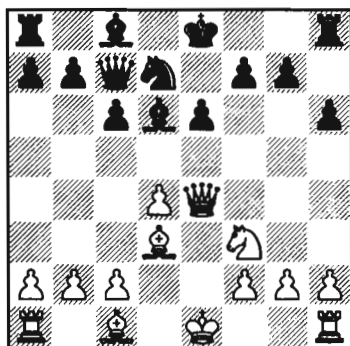
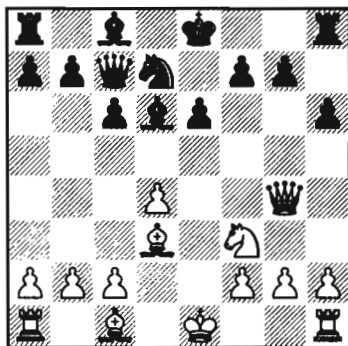
32 ♘f5 h5

33 ♘xe7 ♔xe7

34 ♗d7+ 1-0

### 3: 10...♔c7

- |    |      |      |
|----|------|------|
| 1  | e4   | c6   |
| 2  | d4   | d5   |
| 3  | ♘c3  | dxe4 |
| 4  | ♘xe4 | ♘d7  |
| 5  | ♘g5  | ♘gf6 |
| 6  | ♙d3  | e6   |
| 7  | ♘f3  | ♙d6  |
| 8  | ♚e2  | h6   |
| 9  | ♘e4  | ♘xe4 |
| 10 | ♚xe4 | ♚c7  |



A fashionable move. By developing his queen at this natural post, Black prepares ...c6-c5. However, here he has to reckon with ♚g4.

White's main replies are 11 ♚g4 (3.1), 11 ♙d2 (3.2) and 11 0-0 (3.3).

3.1 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 dxe4 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7 5 ♘g5 ♘gf6 6 ♙d3 e6 7 ♘f3 ♙d6 8 ♚e2 h6 9 ♘e4 ♘xe4 10 ♚xe4 ♚c7)

11 ♚g4

The most critical move. By attacking the g7 pawn, White prevents Black from castling, but at the same time his queen is insecurely placed.

11 ... ♔f8

11...g5?! is a risky alternative: 12 ♚h3! ♚g8 13 ♘d2!, and now:

(a) 13...♙f8?! 14 ♘e4 ♙g7 (after 14...f5?! both 15 0-0 and 15 ♚h5+ favour White) 15 0-0! ♙xd4 16 ♙e3!, and the weakening of Black's kingside causes him problems (Kasparov-Kamsky, Linares 1994) – *Game 14*;

(b) 13...g4!? (the immediate 13...c5!? is also possible) 14 ♚e3 (14 ♚hx6 ♙f4 15 ♚h4 ♙g5 16 ♚g3 ♙f4 leads to a draw by repetition) 14...♙f4 15 ♚e2 c5 16 g3 ♙xd2+ 17 ♙xd2 cxd4 18 0-0-0 with an unclear position (Frolov-Ponomariov, Kiev 1997).

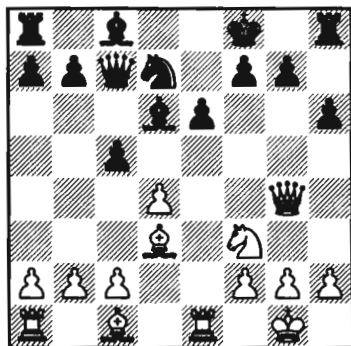
12 0-0 c5

Here the topical continuations are **13 ♖e1** (3.11) and **13 c3** (3.12).

After **13 b3 e5** Black gains good counterplay (Gelfand-Speelman, Munich 1992) – *Game 15*.

**3.11** (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 dxe4 4 ♗xe4 ♘d7 5 ♖g5 ♗gf6 6 ♙d3 e6 7 ♗1f3 ♙d6 8 ♚e2 h6 9 ♗e4 ♗xe4 10 ♚xe4 ♚c7 11 ♚g4 ♗f8 12 0-0 c5)

**13 ♖e1**



White intensifies the piece pressure in the centre.

**13 ... b6**

Removing the central pawn tension favours White: **13...c4** 14 ♙f1 b5 15 ♗4 b4 16 b3! c3 17 ♗e5 ♗xe5 18 ♗xe5 ♙e7 19 ♙e3 ♙b7 20 ♚ad1 g6 ♗1 h4 h5 22 ♚f4 ♗g7 23 ♚d6! with a decisive invasion by the rook (De Firmian-Gulko, USA Ch 1994).

**14 b3**

If **14 ♗e5?! Black** sacrifices the exchange: 14...cxd4! 15 ♚f3 (15 ♗g6+ fxg6 16 ♚f3+ ♗f6 17 ♚xa8

♙xh2+ 18 ♙h1 ♗f7 19 ♚f3 ♙d6 favours Black, Forster-Khalifman, Bad Wörishofen 1996) 15...♙xe5 16 ♚xa8 ♙xh2+ 17 ♗f1 ♙d6 18 ♙d2 ♗e7 (18...♗c5 19 b4 ♗xd3 20 cxd3 ♚b7 21 ♚xb7 ♙xb7, Khalifman) 19 ♚e4 ♚c5 and gains good prospects (Khalifman-Speelman, Hastings 1995).

**14 ... ♗f6**

**15 ♚h4 ♙b7**

**16 ♗e5**

Or **16 ♙g5 ♙xf3** (16...hxg5? 17 ♙xh8+ ♗e7 18 ♚xg7 ♗g8 19 ♚xe6+!) 17 ♙xf6 ♙c6 with a complicated game.

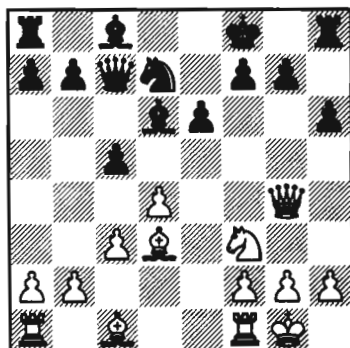
**16 ... cxd4**

**17 ♚xd4 ♚c5**

The chances are equal (Leko-Adams, Dortmund 1996).

**3.12** (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 dxe4 4 ♗xe4 ♘d7 5 ♖g5 ♗gf6 6 ♙d3 e6 7 ♗1f3 ♙d6 8 ♚e2 h6 9 ♗e4 ♗xe4 10 ♚xe4 ♚c7 11 ♚g4 ♗f8 12 0-0 c5)

**13 c3**



Since Black's plans include the fianchetto of his light-square bishop, White intends to exchange it, for which he reinforces his centre.

13 ... b6

14 ♖h4 ♗b7

15 ♗e4 ♗xe4

Or 15... ♗e7 16 ♗g5! ?±.

16 ♖xe4 ♗d8

17 ♗e1!

It is important to intensify the pressure in the centre.

The alternatives are more passive:

17 h3 ♗g8 18 ♗d1 ♖f6 19 ♖c2 c4! = (Z. Almasi-Palac, Vienna 1996);

17 dxc5 ♗xc5 18 ♖e2 ♗e7 19 h3 ♗he8 20 ♖c2 (20 ♖d4!?) 20... ♖d3! ♯ (Illescas-Karpov, Dos Hermanas 1997).

17 ... ♖f6

17... cxd4 is risky: 18 ♖xd4 ♗xh2+ 19 ♗h1 ♖f6 20 ♖f3.

18 ♖h4 ♗e7

19 ♖h3! g5

20 dxc5 bxc5

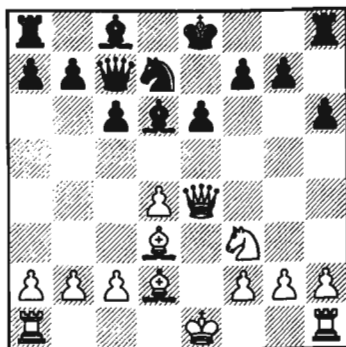
This is better than 20... ♗xc5 21 ♖d4±.

Z. Almasi-Speelman (Erevan OL 1996) now continued 21 ♖d2 h5 22 ♖c4 ♗f4 23 g3 ♗xc1 24 ♗axc1 h4 25 ♖e5! with the initiative for White.

3.2 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 dxe4 4 ♖xe4 ♖d7 5 ♖g5 ♖gf6 6 ♗d3 e6 7 ♖f3 ♗d6 8 ♖e2 h6 9 ♖e4 ♖xe4 10 ♖xe4 ♖c7)

11 ♗d2

A useful developing move, preparing queenside castling.



11 ... c5

This is the most critical reply, but 11...b6 has also been played:

(a) 12 ♖g4 g5 (or 12... ♖f8 13 0-0-0 ♗b7 14 ♗he1 ♗d8 15 ♗b1 ♖f6 16 ♖h4 ♗e7 17 ♖e5 c5=, Khalifman-Epishin, Dos Hermanas 1993) 13 ♖h3 ♗g8! 14 g4 (14 ♖xh6 ♗f8 15 ♖h7 ♖f6! ♯) 14... ♗b7 15 0-0-0 0-0-0 with a good game for Black (Sion Castro-Karpov, Leon 1993) – *Game 16*;

(b) 12 c4 ♗b7 13 ♖e2 c5 14 d5 ♖e5 15 dxe6 ♖xd3+ 16 ♖xd3 0-0-0 17 0-0-0 ♗he8 18 ♗he1 fxe6 19 ♖g6 with the better game for White (Spanenberg-Servat, Argentine Ch 1994).

12 ♖g4

Or 12 c3 ♖f6 13 ♖e2 0-0 14 ♖e5 ♗d8 15 0-0 ♗d7 16 ♗fe1 ♗c6 with equal chances (Wittmann-Podgaets, Moscow 1996).

12 ... ♖f8

13 0-0

13 0-0-0?! is weaker on account of 13...c4 14 ♗e2 b5 15 ♗he1 ♗b7, when Black stands better (Rogic-

Arlandi, Makarska 1996).

13 ♖e4 is a loss of time: 13...c4 14 ♙f1 ♜b8 15 a4 b6 16 ♜e2 ♙a6 17 g3 ♙b7 18 ♙g2 ♙d5 with equal chances (Ehlvest-Gulko, Novgorod 1995).

13 ... c4

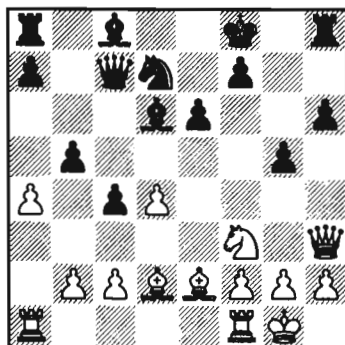
If 13...e5?! there follows 14 dxc5 ♜xc5 15 ♙f5! with the better game for White.

14 ♙e2 b5

15 a4 g5

15...b4 can be met by 16 ♜e5.

16 ♜h3



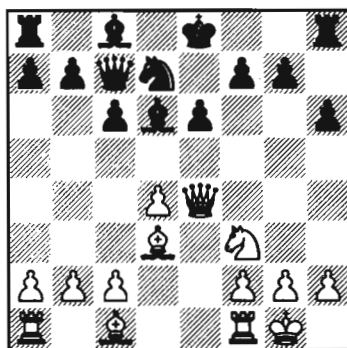
And now:

16...♙g8? 17 axb5 e5 18 ♙a5!, and White gained the advantage (Tiviakov-Shabalov, Amsterdam 1996);

16...♙g7 17 axb5 e5 18 ♙a5 ♜b8 19 ♜d2 ♜f6 20 ♜c3 exd4 with a complicated game (Tiviakov).

3.3 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 dxe4 4 ♜xe4 ♜d7 5 ♜g5 ♜gf6 6 ♙d3 e6 7 ♜f3 ♙d6 8 ♜e2 h6 9 ♜e4 ♜xe4 10 ♜xe4 ♜c7)

11 0-0



A new plan. White hopes to use his heavy pieces more productively.

11 ... b6

11...c5 12 ♜g4 ♜f8 transposes into variation 3.1.

12 ♜e1

If 12 ♜g4 Black has the good reply 12...g5 13 ♜h3 ♜g8 14 ♜d2 ♙b7 15 ♜c4 0-0! 16 c3 (16 ♜e1!?) 16...c5 17 ♜xd6+ (weaker is 17 ♙e3?! ♙f4! 18 ♜fd1 ♜f6!?, Topalov-Tukmakov, Tilburg 1994) 17...♜xd6 18 ♙e3 cxd4 19 cxd4 ♜f6 with a double-edged game (Tukmakov).

12 ... ♙b7

13 ♜h4 c5

14 ♜g5 ♜f6

14...0-0 would also seem to be possible, since 15 ♜h7 ♜fe8 16 ♙xh6 gxh6 17 ♜xh6 fails to 17...♙xh2+ 18 ♜h1 ♙f4.

15 dxc5 ♜xc5

16 ♜e4 ♜xe4

17 ♙xe4 ♙xe4

18 ♜xe4 0-0

If 18...♜c8?!, as played in Z.Almasi-Lalic, Croatia 1996, White



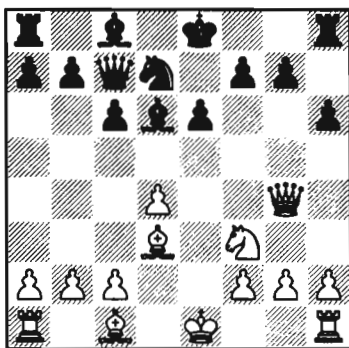
could have gained an advantage by 19 ♖g4!

19 ♖e3 ♖c7

The chances are equal.

Game 14  
Kasparov-Kamsky  
*Linares 1994*

- |    |      |      |
|----|------|------|
| 1  | e4   | c6   |
| 2  | d4   | d5   |
| 3  | ♘d2  | dxe4 |
| 4  | ♘xe4 | ♘d7  |
| 5  | ♘g5  | ♘gf6 |
| 6  | ♙d3  | e6   |
| 7  | ♘f3  | ♙d6  |
| 8  | ♖e2  | h6   |
| 9  | ♘e4  | ♘xe4 |
| 10 | ♖xe4 | ♖c7  |
| 11 | ♖g4  |      |



11 ... g5?!

An unjustified weakening of the position, as the World Champion subtly emphasises. Here 11... ♖f8 is better.

- |    |      |     |
|----|------|-----|
| 12 | ♖h3! | ♖g8 |
| 13 | ♘d2! |     |

Not 13 ♖xh6? ♙f8 14 ♖h7 ♘f6 15 ♖h3 g4 16 ♖h4 gxf3 17 ♖xf6 fxg2 18 ♖g1 ♖xh2.

13 ... ♙f8?!

Black sounds the retreat, yet 13...c5!? (or first 13...g4) was possible.

14 ♘e4 ♙g7

If 14...f5?!, then both 15 0-0 fxe4?! 16 ♖xe6+ ♘d8 17 ♖xg8 exd3 18 h4 and the simple 15 ♖h5+ ♖e7 16 ♘g3 favour White.

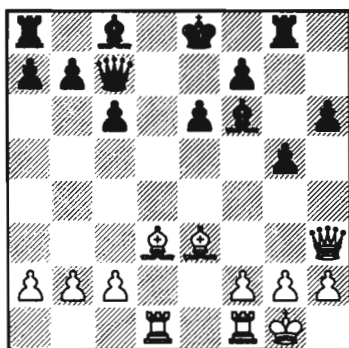
15 0-0! ♙xd4

16 ♙e3 ♙e5

If 16...♙xb2 White sacrifices the exchange: 17 c3! ♙xa1 18 ♖xa1 ♖g6, and develops a strong attack after 19 ♖d1! f5 20 ♖h5 ♖f7 21 ♙c2! fxe4 22 ♙xe4 ♘f8 23 ♙xg6+ ♘xg6 24 ♖xh6 ♖e5 25 ♙d4 (Kasparov).

17 ♖ad1 ♘f6

18 ♘xf6+ ♙xf6



19 ♙h7! ♖h8

20 ♖xh6 ♙e7

If 20...♖e7 there is the pretty variation 21 ♙c5! ♖xh7 22 ♖d8+! ♖xd8 23 ♖f8+ with a mating attack.

21 ♖g7 ♜f8  
 22 ♜d3 ♙d7  
 23 ♙xg5 ♙xg5  
 24 ♖xg5 ♖d8  
 25 ♖e5 ♖e7  
 26 ♖c7 ♙c8  
 27 ♖a5

Despite White's extra pawn, he has no need to go into an ending, as long as the black king is insecure.

27 ... b6  
 28 ♖e5 ♙a6  
 29 ♙e4 ♜c8  
 30 c4 ♜g8  
 31 b3 ♙b7  
 32 ♜fd1 ♙a8  
 33 c5! bxc5  
 34 ♜d6 c4  
 35 bxc4 c5  
 36 ♙xa8 ♜xa8  
 37 ♖xc5 ♜b8  
 38 g3 ♖b7  
 39 ♖d4 ♙f8  
 40 ♖f6 1-0

Game 15  
**Gelfand-Speelman**  
*Munich 1992*

1 e4 c6  
 2 d4 d5  
 3 ♘d2 dxe4  
 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7  
 5 ♘g5 ♘gf6  
 6 ♙d3 e6  
 7 ♘1f3 ♙d6  
 8 ♖e2 h6  
 9 ♘e4 ♘xe4  
 10 ♖xe4 ♖c7  
 11 ♖g4 ♙f8

12 0-0 c5

13 b3

Here 13 ♜e1 is more energetic.

13 ... e5

After 13...cxd4 14 ♖xd4 ♘e5 15 ♙b2 ♘xf3+ 16 gx3 ♙xh2+ 17 ♙g2 the destruction of White's kingside is more than compensated for by his initiative (Speelman).

14 dxc5

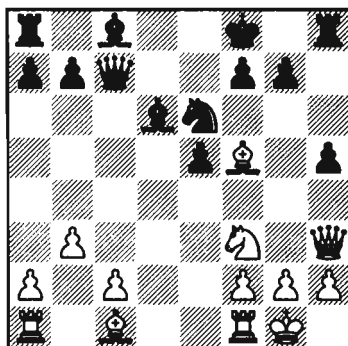
14 c3 cxd4 15 cxd4 ♖c3 16 ♖h4! is possible.

14 ... ♘xc5

15 ♙f5 h5

15...♙xf5 16 ♖xf5 e4 17 ♘h4 ♙g8= is safer.

16 ♖h3 ♘e6



17 ♖h4

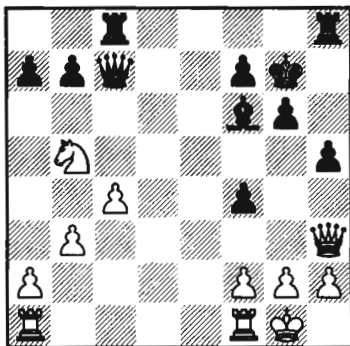
A loss of time, leading to a simplification of the position. More active was 17 ♜d1! ♙e7 18 ♖g3! ♙f6 19 ♙a3+ ♙g8 20 ♙d6 ♘f4 21 ♙h1 with the better chances for White (Speelman).

17 ... ♙e7

18 ♖g3 ♘f4

19 ♙xf4 exf4

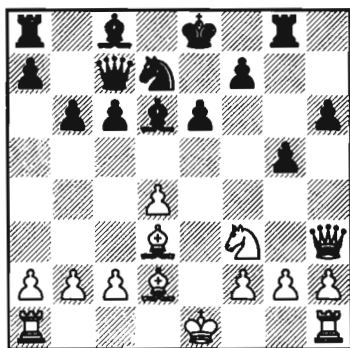
20 ♖h3 g6  
 21 ♙xc8 ♖xc8  
 22 c4 ♙g7  
 23 ♘d4 ♙f6  
 24 ♘b5



7 ♘f3 ♙d6  
 8 ♖e2 h6  
 9 ♘e4 ♘xe4  
 10 ♖xe4 ♖c7  
 11 ♙d2 b6

11...c5 is more energetic.

12 ♖g4 g5!  
 13 ♖h3 ♖g8!



24 ... ♖c5

24... ♖a5 25 ♖ad1 ♖cd8 26 ♖d7  
 ♖xa2 27 ♘d6 ♖hf8 28 c5 ♙d4! 29  
 ♘xb7 ♖fe8! is a reliable alternative  
 (Speelman).

25 ♖ad1 ♖cd8  
 26 ♖f3 ♖he8  
 27 ♖xd8 ♖xd8  
 28 ♖xb7 ♖d2  
 29 ♖f3 a5  
 30 ♘c3 ½-½

Game 16  
 Sion Castro-Karpov  
 Leon 1993

1 e4 c6  
 2 d4 d5  
 3 ♘d2 dxe4  
 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7  
 5 ♘g5 ♘gf6  
 6 ♙d3 e6

‘À la Kamsky’ in a superior version! Now over the course of several moves the capture of the h6 pawn allows Black to develop an enduring initiative, e.g. 14 ♖xh6 ♙f8 15 ♖h7 ♘f6!

14 g4 ♙b7  
 15 0-0-0

And here 15 ♖xh6 is dangerous in view of 15...c5 16 ♘xg5 ♖xg5! 17 ♙xg5 ♙xh1 18 0-0-0 c4 with a clear advantage to Black (Karpov).

15 ... 0-0-0  
 16 ♖he1 ♙f4  
 17 ♙b1

Once again 17 ♖xh6 ♙xd2+ 18 ♘xd2 ♖f4 19 ♖e4 ♖f6! 20 ♖h3 c5 gives Black the initiative (Karpov).

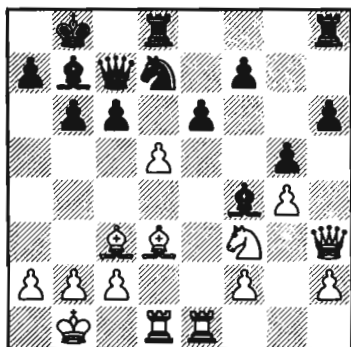
17 ... ♖h8

18 ♙c3?!

It was time for White to think of simplifying: 18 ♙xf4 ♜xf4 19 ♜g3 ♜xg3 20 hxg3 c5.

18 ... ♙b8

19 d5



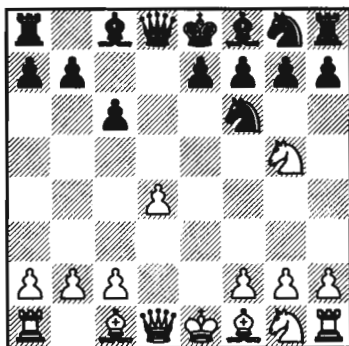
Initiating a series of moves typical

of a game between an amateur and a professional.

19 ...	♙c5!
20 ♙xh8	♜xh8
21 ♘d4	a6
22 ♘xe6	fxe6
23 ♜xe6	♘e5!
24 ♙f5	♘c4
25 ♜xh6	♜xh6
26 ♜xh6	♜e5
27 ♜f8+	♙a7
28 ♜b4	♘d2+!
29 ♙a1	♜e2
30 ♜g1	♜xf2
31 ♜d1	♜e2
32 ♜g1	♜xh2
33 ♜d1	♜e2
34 ♜h1	a5
35 ♜c3	d4
0-1	

## 4: 5...♞df6

- |   |      |      |
|---|------|------|
| 1 | e4   | c6   |
| 2 | d4   | d5   |
| 3 | ♟c3  | dxe4 |
| 4 | ♞xe4 | ♞d7  |
| 5 | ♞g5  | ♞df6 |



This move is an attempt to refute 5 ♞g5. With his unusual knight move Black tries to release his bishop to take up an active position.

As in the main variations, White's basic plans involve 6 ♟d3 (4.1), 6 ♟c4 (4.2) and 6 ♞f3 (4.3).

4.1 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♟c3 dxe4 4 ♞xe4 ♞d7 5 ♞g5 ♞df6)

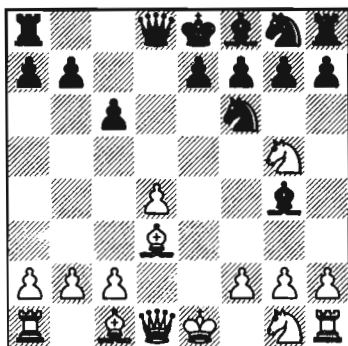
6 ♟d3

With this move White does not prevent the active development of the black bishop.

6 ... ♟g4

6...h6 would appear to be possible, although it has hardly been studied: 7

♞xf7!? (the critical reply, since if 7 ♞f3 Black simplifies the position by 7...♟f5! 8 ♞e5 ♟xd3 9 ♞xd3 e6 or 9...♞d5 followed by ...♞d7) 7...♟xf7 8 ♞f3. Shirazi-Burger (Saint John 1988) continued 8...g5 9 h4 g4 10 ♞e5+ ♟g7 11 c3 h5? (11...♟e6 was essential) 12 ♞d2 ♞h7 13 ♟xh7 ♞xh7 14 ♞g5+ ♟h8 15 ♞g6+ ♟g7 16 ♞xe7+ 1-0.



7 ♞f3 ♟h5

A practically forced loss of tempo, since if 7...e6 (7...h6? loses to 8 ♞xf7! ♟xf3 9 ♟g6!) 8 h3 (here 8 ♞xf7? does not work because of 8...♟xf3) 8...♟xf3 9 ♞xf3 ♟d6 10 0-0 ♞c7 11 ♞e2 ♟f4 12 ♟xf4 ♞xf4 13 ♞ad1 ♞e7 14 ♞e5 ♞d8 15 c3 with a slight but enduring advantage for White (Nunn-Christiansen, Szirak IZ 1987).

8 c3

Weaker is 8 h3? h6 9 ♞e4 ♞xe4

10 ♖xe4 ♜f6 11 ♙d3 ♙xf3 12 ♜xf3  
♜xd4, when White loses a pawn.

8 ... e6

Also interesting is 8...♜c7 9 ♜c2  
h6 10 ♜e6 (10...♜e4 ♙xf3 11 gxf3  
♜d5=) 10...♜d6 11 ♜xf8 ♙xf3 12  
♜g6! ♙xg2 13 ♜g1 ♜xh2 14 ♜xg2  
♜xg2 15 ♜xh8 ♜h1+, and here,  
instead of 16 ♙f1? ♜e4+! with ad-  
vantage to Black (Riemersma-Van der  
Wiel, Dutch Ch 1987), 16 ♜d2 ♜f3  
17 ♜b3 maintains equality.

9 ♜b3 ♜c7

9...h6 can be met by 10 ♜xb7 hxg5  
11 ♜xc6+ ♜d7 12 ♜e5 ♜c8 13 ♜a4  
with the threats of 14 ♙b5 and 14  
♙xg5.

10 ♜e5 ♙d6

11 ♙f4

Weaker is 11 ♜c4 ♙e7  
(11...♙xh2? 12 ♜xh2!±) 12 ♜e5 ♜d7  
13 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 14 0-0 ♜f6 15 ♜e1  
♜d8 with equal chances (Van der  
Wiel-Karpov, Amsterdam 1988).

11 ... ♜e7

11...♜d5?! 12 ♙g3 f6 13 ♜c4!  
favours White.

12 ♙g3 0-0

The chances are equal (Van der  
Wiel).

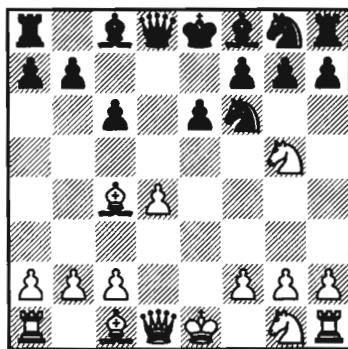
4.2 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 dxe4  
4 ♜xe4 ♜d7 5 ♜g5 ♜df6)

6 ♙c4

This move forces Black to block  
the a2-g8 diagonal.

6 ... e6

Other ways of defending f7 lead to  
difficulties:



6...♜d5 7 ♜1f3 g6 8 0-0 ♙g7 9  
♜e1 h6 10 ♜e4 ♙g4 11 a4 (or 11 c3  
♜gf6 12 ♜c5 with the initiative for  
White, Psakhis-Am.Rodriguez, Sochi  
1988 - *Game 17*) 11...♜gf6 12 ♜xf6+  
♙xf6 13 ♜a3 ♜f8 14 h3 ♙xf3 15  
♜xf3 ♜g7 16 c3 ♜d7 17 ♜d3, and  
White's two bishops give him a slight  
advantage (Spassky-Karpov, Belfort  
1988).

6...♜h6 7 c3 ♜c7 8 ♜1f3 ♙g4 9  
♜b3 e6 10 ♜e5 ♙d6 11 ♜xg4  
♜hxg4 12 h3 ♜h6 13 ♙xe6!? 0-0  
(after 13...fxe6 14 ♜xe6 ♜e7 15  
♙xh6 gxh6 16 0-0-0 the threat of 17  
♜he1 puts the black king in danger)  
14 ♙c4 ♜fe8+ 15 ♜f1 and White is a  
pawn up (Benjamin-A.Fernandes,  
New York 1993).

7 ♜1f3

Also possible is 7 ♜e2 c5 (or  
7...♙d6 8 0-0 h6 9 ♜f3 ♜c7 10  
♙d3±) 8 0-0 h6 9 ♜f3 a6 10 a4 cxd4  
11 ♜exd4 ♙d6 12 ♜e2 ♜e7 with a  
complicated game (De Firmian-  
Karpov, Biel 1990) - *Game 18*.

7 ... h6

8 ♖h3

8 ♖xf7 would appear to be insufficient for an advantage: 8...♗xf7 9 ♖e5+ ♗e8 10 ♖d3 ♖e7 11 0-0 ♖f5 12 c3 ♖d6 13 ♖g6 ♗d7 14 ♖xh8 ♖xh8 with equal chances (Sherzer-Hill, Mamaia 1991).

8 ... ♖d6

9 ♖e2 ♖e7

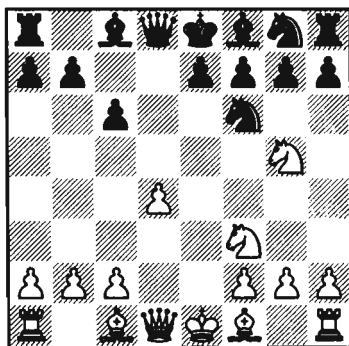
10 ♖d2

Or 10 ♖f4 c5 11 dxc5 ♖a5+ 12 ♖d2 ♖xc5 13 0-0-0 ♖d7 14 ♖b3 ♖c7 15 ♖d3 ♖c6 with equal chances (Arakhamia-Ledger, Hastings 1991/2).

Hübner-Karpov (Belfort 1988) now continued 10...♖c7 11 0-0-0 b5 12 ♖d3 a6 13 ♖he1 ♖b7 14 g3 c5 15 dxc5 ♖xc5, and here White could have retained somewhat the better chances by 16 ♖f4!?

4.3 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 dxe4 4 ♖xe4 ♖d7 5 ♖g5 ♖df6)

6 ♖1f3



With this natural move White prevents 6...h6? in view of 7 ♖xf7!

♗xf7 8 ♖e5+ ♗e6 (8...♗e8 9 ♖d3±) 9 ♖c4+ ♖d5 10 ♖g4+.

6 ... e6

Other possibilities must also be considered:

6...♖h6 7 c3 g6 8 ♖c4 ♖g7 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♖e1 ♖f5 11 ♖e5 ♖d5 12 ♖gf3 ♖c7 13 ♖b3 e6?! (13...b6±) 14 c4 ♖f6 15 g4 ♖e7 16 ♖f4 ♖a5 17 ♖c1! with a spatial advantage for White (Smirin-Smyslov, 55th USSR Ch 1988) – Game 19.

6...♖g4 7 h3 (7 ♖xf7 is insufficient: 7...♖xf3 8 ♖xd8 ♖xd1 9 ♖e6 ♖h5 10 ♖c7+ ♗d7=) 7...♖xf3 8 ♖xf3 e6 9 g3 ♖d6 10 ♖g2 ♖e7 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♖e2 ♖c7 13 c4 b6 14 b3 ♖ad8 15 ♖b2 and White's position is preferable (De Firmian-A.Fernandes, New York 1993).

7 ♖e5

In A.Sokolov-Spraggett (match (8), Saint John 1988) White played 7 ♖d3 ♖d6 8 ♖e5 ♖h6?! 9 ♖d2 a5 and here after 10 ♖e4! ♖xe4 11 ♖xe4 ♖f5 12 0-0-0 he could have gained the advantage. However, even after 8...♖xe5 9 dxe5 ♖a5+ 10 ♗d1! ♖xe5 11 ♖d8+! he can transpose into a superior ending.

7 ... ♖h6

8 ♖d3 ♖d6

Or 8...♖xd4 9 ♖gxf7 ♖xf7 10 ♖xf7 ♖b4+! 11 c3 ♖f8 (11...♖xc3+ 12 bxc3 ♖xc3+ 13 ♖d2 ♖xd3 14 ♖xh8 ♖e4+ 15 ♖e2±) 12 0-0 ♖d5 13 cxb4 ♖xf7 14 ♖e2 and White's chances are better (Nunn).

9 c3 ♖c7

10 ♖e2

Also good is 10  $\text{d}g3$   $\text{d}f5$  11  $\text{w}e2$   $\text{d}e7$  12  $\text{d}g5$   $\text{d}xe5$  13  $\text{d}xe5$   $\text{d}d7$  14  $\text{f}4$   $\text{d}c5$  15  $\text{d}c2$   $\text{h}6$  16  $\text{w}h5$  with an attacking position (Watson-Pedersen, Herning 1991).

10 ... c5

Or 10...0-0 11  $\text{d}g3$   $\text{d}f5$  12  $\text{g}4$   $\text{d}e7$  13  $\text{h}4$  with an attack.

11  $\text{d}b5+$   $\text{d}e7$

11... $\text{d}d7?$  loses by force to 12  $\text{d}xd7$   $\text{d}xd7$  13  $\text{dxc5}$   $\text{dxc5}$  14  $\text{d}xe6!$

12 0-0

White has the better chances (Nunn-Tal, Brussels 1988) – *Game 20*.

### Game 17

**Psakhis-Am.Rodriguez**

*Sochi 1988*

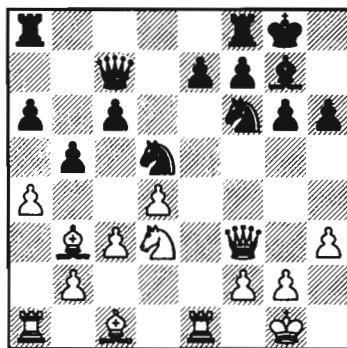
1	$\text{e}4$	$\text{c}6$
2	$\text{d}4$	$\text{d}5$
3	$\text{d}d2$	$\text{dxe}4$
4	$\text{d}xe4$	$\text{d}d7$
5	$\text{d}g5$	$\text{d}df6$
6	$\text{d}c4$	$\text{d}d5$

6...e6 is sounder and more natural.

7	$\text{d}1f3$	$\text{g}6$
8	0-0	$\text{d}g7$
9	$\text{h}e1$	$\text{h}6$
10	$\text{d}e4$	$\text{d}g4$
11	$\text{c}3$	$\text{d}gf6$
12	$\text{d}c5!$	$\text{w}c7$
13	$\text{h}3$	$\text{d}xf3?!$

A few moves later Black comes to regret this exchange. Stronger was 13... $\text{d}f5$  14  $\text{d}e5\pm$ .

14	$\text{w}xf3$	0-0
15	$\text{d}b3$	$\text{b}6$
16	$\text{d}d3$	$\text{b}5$
17	$\text{a}4$	$\text{a}6$



18  $\text{d}f4!$

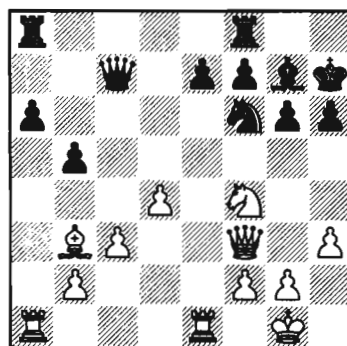
A highly concrete move, based on the weakening of the a2-g8 diagonal, and in particular the g6 square.

18 ...  $\text{d}xf4$

19  $\text{d}xf4$   $\text{d}h7$

Against 19...e6 Psakhis had prepared a whole cascade of sacrifices: 20  $\text{h}xe6!$   $\text{fxe}6$  21  $\text{d}xe6+$ !  $\text{d}h7$  22  $\text{d}xg6!$   $\text{h}fe8$  23  $\text{w}f5$   $\text{h}xe6$  24  $\text{d}e5+$   $\text{d}h8$  25  $\text{w}xe6$ . But this theme is not yet exhausted.

20  $\text{axb}5$   $\text{cxb}5$



21  $\text{d}xf7!$   $\text{h}xf7$



22 ♘xg6! ♜d8

If 22...♙xg6 there follows 23 ♜d3+ ♘g5 24 ♜e5+.

23 ♜xa6 ♘g8

The knight is still taboo in view of a mating attack: 23...♙xg6 24 ♜e4+! ♘g5 25 h4+ ♘h5 26 ♜f5+ ♘xh4 27 g3+.

24 ♘e5 ♜ff8

25 ♘c6 ♘d5

26 ♜e2 ♜d6

27 ♜xb5 ♜c8

28 ♘e5 ♜b8

29 ♜a4 ♜xb2

30 ♜xd6 ♜xd6

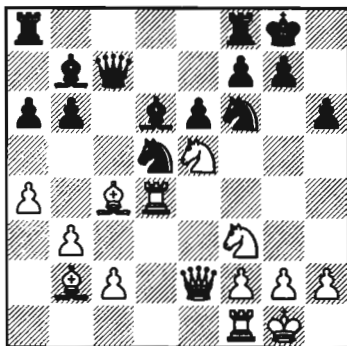
31 ♘c4 1-0

15 ... b6

16 ♙b2 ♙b7

17 ♜ad1 ♘ed5

18 ♜d4



### Game 18

**De Firmian-Karpov**  
*Biel 1990*

1 e4 c6

2 d4 d5

3 ♘d2 dxe4

4 ♘xe4 ♘d7

5 ♘g5 ♘df6

6 ♙c4 e6

7 ♘e2 c5

8 0-0 h6

9 ♘f3 a6

10 a4 cxd4

11 ♘exd4 ♙d6

12 ♜e2 ♘e7

13 ♘e5 ♜c7

14 ♘df3 0-0

15 b3

15 ♙f4 can be met by 15...♘ed5 16 ♙g3 b6 17 ♜ad1 ♙b7. A similar manoeuvre is also possible after 15 a5 - 15...♘ed5 16 c3 b5.

18 ... b5!

The position is ripe for active measures. With this pawn sacrifice Karpov aims to take the initiative: 19 axb5 axb5 20 ♙xb5 ♜a2 21 ♘c4 e5.

19 ♙xd5 ♙xd5

20 ♘g4 ♙e7

21 ♘fe5 ♜b7

22 ♘xf6+ ♙xf6

23 ♜g4 ♘h8

24 c4 bxc4

25 ♘d7?

An unjustified loss of time. 25 bxc4 ♙c6 26 a5 was essential.

25 ... ♙xb2

26 ♜xb2 ♜g8

27 ♜h4 ♘h7

28 ♘e5 cxb3

29 ♜e1 ♜ac8

30 ♜d2 f5

31 g4 g5

32 ♜h3 ♜c2

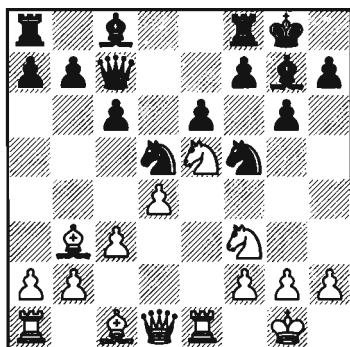
0-1

Game 19  
Smirin-Smyslov  
55th USSR Ch 1988

- |   |     |      |
|---|-----|------|
| 1 | e4  | c6   |
| 2 | d4  | d5   |
| 3 | d2  | dxe4 |
| 4 | xe4 | d7   |
| 5 | g5  | df6  |
| 6 | f3  | h6   |

Here 6...e6 is considered the main continuation, but in his later years Smyslov does not think it advisable to engage in theoretical discussions with young players, and prefers paths that are little-explored.

- |    |     |      |
|----|-----|------|
| 7  | c3  | g6   |
| 8  | c4  | g7   |
| 9  | 0-0 | 0-0  |
| 10 | e1  | f5   |
| 11 | e5  | d5   |
| 12 | gf3 | c7   |
| 13 | b3  | e6?! |

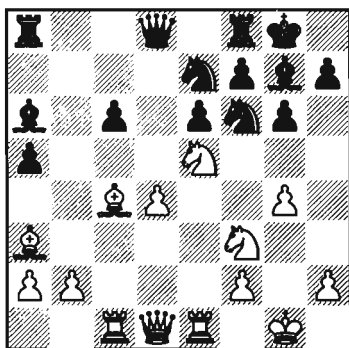


Illogical. Black should have thought about developing his second bishop by 13...b6. Now White gains a great spatial advantage by force.

- |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|
| 14 | c4 | f6 |
| 15 | g4 | e7 |
| 16 | f4 | a5 |
- 16...d8 was more circumspect.  
17 c1! b5?!
- And here 17...c5 was more natural.
- |    |     |       |
|----|-----|-------|
| 18 | d2  | d8    |
| 19 | b4  | bx c4 |
| 20 | xc4 | a5    |
| 21 | a3! |       |

Sensibly, Smirin is not tempted by the win of a pawn by 21 ex7 xe7 22 xc6 d6, since with the exchange of his dark-square bishop the weakened dark squares in White's position would give Black more than sufficient compensation.

- 21 ... a6?



Black underestimates the threats posed by the white bishops on adjacent diagonals. It is true that he was unable to block one of them by 21...d5 on account of 22 xd5 cxd5 23 c6 xc6 24 xf8, when he has no compensation for the exchange, but with the 'ugly' 21...d7 he could have held on.

22 ♘xf7! ♖xf7  
 23 ♙xe6 ♘ed5  
 24 ♘e5 ♖aa7  
 25 ♖xc6

The simple 25 ♘xc6 was also good enough to win.

25 ... ♘f4  
 26 ♖xa6 ♖xa6  
 27 ♙xf7+ ♔h8  
 28 ♚f3 1-0

Game 20  
 Nunn-Tal  
 Brussels 1988

1 e4 c6  
 2 d4 d5  
 3 ♘d2 dxe4  
 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7  
 5 ♘g5 ♘df6  
 6 ♘f3 e6  
 7 ♘e5 ♘h6  
 8 ♙d3 ♙d6  
 9 c3 ♚c7  
 10 ♚e2 c5  
 11 ♙b5+ ♔e7

As mentioned in the analysis, 11...♙d7? loses to 12 ♘xd7 ♘xd7 13 dxc5 ♙xc5 14 ♘xe6!

12 0-0 cxd4?!

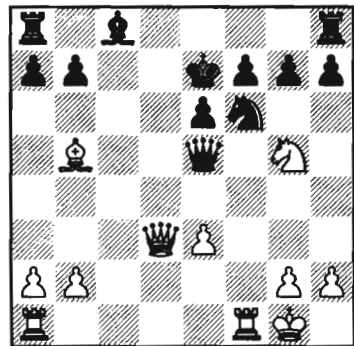
12...a6 13 ♙d3 b6 14 f4± would have been better.

13 cxd4 ♘f5  
 14 ♙e3! ♘xe3  
 15 fxe3?

White has a spatial advantage and

the more active pieces, but with this one move he makes the position obscure. As shown by Nunn, he should have activated his queen: 15 ♚xe3 ♘d5 16 ♚g3 f6 17 ♘e4! ♖g8 18 ♚h4 ♙xe5 19 dxe5 ♚xe5 20 ♚xh7.

15 ... ♙xe5  
 16 dxe5 ♚xe5  
 17 ♚d3



17 ... ♚xg5?

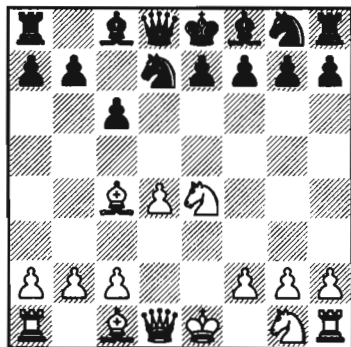
Suicidal, whereas after 17...a6! 18 ♚a3+ ♚d6 19 ♚xd6+ ♔xd6 20 ♘xf7+ ♔e7 21 ♘xh8 axb5 22 g4 ♙d7 23 g5 ♖xh8 24 gxf6+ gxf6 Black had the chance to go into a sound enough ending (Nunn). But 'on the way' he could also have considered 22...g5!? 23 h4 ♖a4, not losing hope of winning the errant knight.

18 ♚a3+ ♔d8  
 19 ♖ad1+ ♙d7  
 20 ♙xd7 1-0

## PART II: 5 ♖c4

### 5... ♘g6 6 ♘g5 e6 7 ♚e2 ♘b6)

1	e4	c6
2	d4	d5
3	♗c3	dx e4
4	♗xe4	♗d7
5	♖c4	



An active development of this bishop, by which White retains a choice of deploying it on the a2-g8 and b1-h7 diagonals.

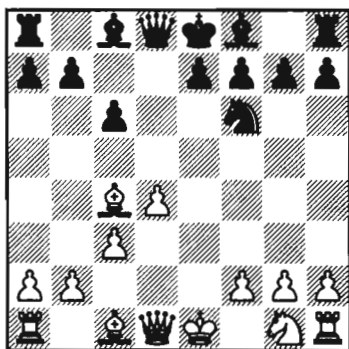
5 ... ♗g6

5... ♗df6 transposes after 6 ♗g5 into a variation examined in the previous chapter.

6 ♗g5

The main continuation. Black cannot get by without playing ... ♗b6, which removes his control of e5, and, in contrast to the variations examined in Chapters 1-4, the white knight aims to occupy this square, where it will be supported by the other knight.

But the modest exchange 6 ♗xf6+ ♗xf6 is also not so harmless. Now the developing 7 ♗f3 leads to positions examined in Chapter 9 after 5 ♗f3 ♗gf6 6 ♗xf6+ ♗xf6 7 ♖c4. Of independent significance is 7 c3, a continuation with which it is useful to be familiar.



(a) 7... ♚c7, and now:

(a1) 8 h3 ♖f5 9 ♗f3 e6 10 0-0 ♖d6 11 ♚e1 h6 12 ♚e2 0-0-0 13 a4 g5 14 ♗e5 ♗d5 15 a5 f6 16 ♗d3 h5, and Black's action on the kingside proved more effective than his opponent's on the other side of the board (Short-Adams, Groningen WC 1997);

(a2) 8 ♚b3 e6 9 ♗f3 ♖d6 10 0-0 (10 ♖g5 allows Black to seize the initiative: 10... ♖d7 11 0-0 ♗e4! 12 ♖h4 g5 13 ♖g3 g4 14 ♖xd6 ♚xd6 15

♗fe1 gxf3 16 ♗xe4 0-0-0 17 g3 h5, Ermenkov-Lago, Palma de Mallorca 1989) 10...0-0 11 ♗e1 b6 12 ♖g5 ♖b7 13 a4 c5 14 ♖xf6 ♖xf3 with equal chances (Bellin-Ostenstad, Gausdal 1990);

(a3) 8 ♗e2 ♖g4 9 f3 ♖f5 10 g4! ♖g6 11 f4 ♖e4 12 ♘f3 ♖d5 (or 12...e6 13 0-0 ♖xf3 14 ♗xf3 ♖d6 15 a4! ♘d5 16 ♖d2 h5 17 g5 g6 18 a5 a6 19 ♖d3! with a great spatial advantage for White, Kostyra-Sapis, Poland 1990) 13 ♗g1 h5 14 g5 ♖xc4 15 ♗xc4 ♘d5 16 ♘e5 and White's chances are preferable (Iruzubieta-F.Garcia, Spanish Ch 1991);

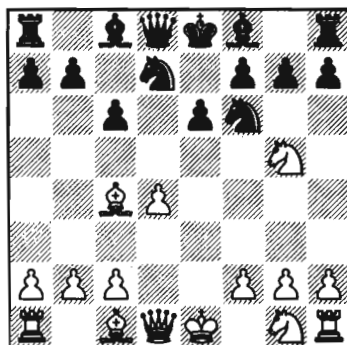
(b) 7...e6 8 ♘f3 ♖e7 9 0-0 0-0 (here Smyslov has tried 9...b5!? 10 ♖d3 ♖b7 11 ♗e2 0-0 12 ♖g5 a6 13 ♘e5 ♘d5 14 ♖d2 c5 15 dxc5 ♖xc5 with a double-edged game, Zhukovitsky-Smyslov, 37th USSR Ch 1969) 10 ♗e2 ♗c7 11 ♖g5 (11 ♘e5 b6 12 ♖f4 ♖d6 13 ♖g3 ♖b7 14 ♗ad1 c5 15 dxc5 ♗xc5 16 ♗xd6± is also good, Wittmann-Danner, Graz 1991 11...c5 (weaker is 11...♘d5?! 12 ♖xc7 ♗xe7 13 ♘e5 ♗c7 14 ♗e4!±, Balashov-Smagin, Voronezh 1987) 12 ♗ad1, and here in Dimitrov-Guerra (Olot 1992), instead of 12...cxd4?! 13 ♗xd4 ♖d7 14 ♘e5 with advantage to White, Black should have played 12...b6±;

(c) 7...g6 8 ♘f3 ♖g7 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♗e1 (10 ♖f4 ♖g4 11 h3 ♖xf3 12 ♗xf3 ♘d5 13 ♖g3 b5 14 ♖d3 e6 15 ♗fe1 ♗d7 16 h4 h5 17 ♖e5±, Boe-Arkell, Ostende 1991) 10...♘d5 11 ♖g5 ♗e8 12 ♗d2 ♖g4 13 ♘e5 ♖e6

14 ♖h6 ♗d6 15 ♖xg7 ♘xg7 16 ♗ad1. White's chances are preferable (J.Fernandez-Epishin, Logrono 1991).

6 ... e6

Blocking the diagonal by 6...♘d5 involves a delay in development and allows White to build up a persistent initiative: 7 ♘f3 h6 (7...e6?! 8 ♘e5 ♘xe5 9 dxe5±) 8 ♘e4 ♘7b6 9 ♖b3 (also possible is 9 ♖d3 ♘b4 10 ♖e2 ♖f5 11 a3 ♖xe4 12 axb4 e6 13 c3 ♖d6 14 0-0 ♗f6 15 ♘d2 ♖f5 16 f4 0-0 17 ♘f3±, Rychagov-Meduna, Manila OL 1992) 9...♖f5 10 ♘g3 ♖h7 11 0-0 e6 12 ♘e5 ♘d7 13 f4!? (also good is 13 c4 ♘5f6 14 ♖f4 ♖e7 15 ♗e2 0-0 16 ♗ad1 ♗e8 17 ♘h5 ♘xh5 18 ♗xh5±, Salai-Meduna, Stary Smokovec 1992) 13...♗c7 14 c4 ♘5f6 15 ♘h1 ♖e7 16 ♖c2 ♖xc2 17 ♗xc2 h5 18 f5 with the better chances for White (Gazik-Meduna, Stary Smokovec 1992).



7 ♗e2

White prevents his knight from being driven away (7...h6? 8 ♘xf7!) and takes control of e5.

Developing by 7 ♘f3 allows Black to drive back the other knight to c3, which assists his attack on the centre: 7...h6 8 ♘h3 b5 9 ♖e2 c5 10 ♖-0 a6 11 a4 b4 12 ♘f4 ♙d6 13 dxc5 ♘xc5 14 ♘d3 ♘xd3 15 ♗xd3 ♗c7 and Black's position is preferable (Schmittziel-Podgaets, Dortmund 1993).

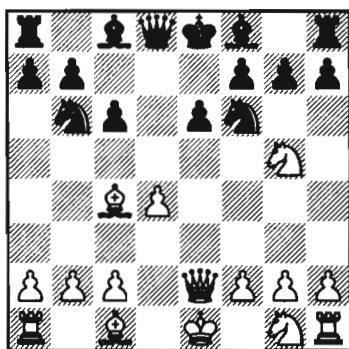
7 ♘e2 h6 8 ♘f3 has the same drawbacks:

(a) 8...♙d6 9 0-0 (or 9 ♙f4 ♙xf4 10 ♘xf4 ♗c7 11 ♘d3 b5 12 ♙b3 c5 13 ♘xc5 ♘xc5 14 dxc5 ♗xc5=, Miladinovic-Markovic, Cetinje 1990) 9...♗c7 10 ♘c3 b5 11 ♙d3 b4 12 ♘e4 ♘xe4 13 ♙xe4 ♘f6 14 ♙d3 0-0 15 ♗e2 ♙b7 16 ♙d2, and Black achieved 16...c5, the main strategic idea of the variation. (Simagin-Smyslov (Moscow 1963) – *Game 2*;

(b) 8...c5 9 0-0 ♘b6 10 ♙b5+ ♙d7 11 a4 a6 12 ♙xd7+ ♘bxd7 13 ♖c4 cxd4 14 ♘exd4 ♙c5 with equal chances (Coupet-Spiridonov, Cannes 1992).

7 ... ♘b6

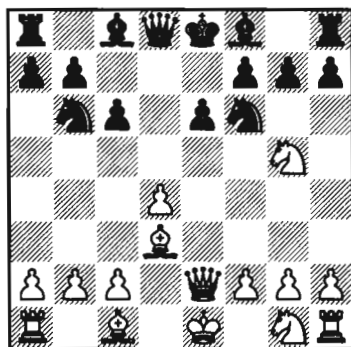
7...♗e7?! (preparing queenside castling) was tried in the game Stein-Flohr (Ukrainian Ch 1957). After 8 ♙d2 b6 9 0-0-0 ♙b7 10 ♘f3 h6 (if 10...0-0-0 11 ♘e5 with a strong initiative), instead of 11 ♙b4!? c5! with great complications, White could have retained a positional advantage by 11 ♘e4.



Now White's main replies are 8 ♙d3 (Chapters 5 and 6) and 8 ♙b3 (Chapters 7 and 8).

## 5: 8 ♖d3 h6 9 ♞5f3 c5 10 dxc5 ♙xc5

- |   |      |      |
|---|------|------|
| 1 | e4   | c6   |
| 2 | d4   | d5   |
| 3 | ♟c3  | dxe4 |
| 4 | ♞xe4 | ♞d7  |
| 5 | ♙c4  | ♞g6  |
| 6 | ♞g5  | e6   |
| 7 | ♞e2  | ♞b6  |
| 8 | ♙d3  |      |



This bishop retreat has a tactical basis: 8...♞xd4? 9 ♞1f3 ♞d5 10 ♞e5! ♞xg2 11 ♞f1 ♙e7 12 ♞ef3 ♞g4 13 ♞xf7 with a dangerous attack for White (Arnason-Helmers, Reykjavik 1982).

8 ... h6

It is best to drive away the active knight as soon as possible. Risky is 8...c5?! 9 dxc5 ♙xc5 10 ♞1f3 h6 (or 10...♞c7 11 ♞e5 0-0 12 ♙f4 ♙b4+ 13 ♞f1 ♞bd5 14 ♙g3 ♙d6 15 c4 ♞b4 16 ♞g4±, Kupreichik-Tamme, Parnu 1975) 11 ♞e4 ♞xe4 12 ♞xe4 ♞d5 13 ♞g4 g6 14 0-0 ♞d7 15 ♞d1

♞f6 16 ♞h4 ♙e7 17 ♙g5 ♞g8 18 ♙xe7 ♞xe7 19 ♞f6 ♞f8 20 ♞e5 ♞c5 21 ♞xg6 ♞d5 22 ♙b5+ 1-0 (Rublevsky-Tataev, Azov 1991).

9 ♞5f3 c5

9...♙e7 10 ♙d2 ♞bd5 11 0-0-0 ♞d7 is passive. However, if White tries to force matters by 12 ♞e5, then after 12...♞xe5 13 dxe5 ♞c7 14 f4 ♙d7 15 ♞f3 0-0-0 16 a3 c5 17 c4 ♞b6 18 ♙a5 ♙a4 Black equalises (Kupreichik-Smyslov, Moscow 1972). More subtle is 12 a3!, and after 13 c4 White gains an enduring advantage.

10 dxc5

The main continuation.

The attempt to defend the pawn by 10 ♙e3 allows Black to exchange this bishop: 10...a6 11 c3 ♞bd5 12 ♞e5 ♞c7 (or 12...cxd4 13 ♙xd4 ♞f4 14 ♞f3 ♞xd3+ 15 ♞xd3 b5?! 16 ♞e2 ♙b7 17 ♞f4±, Hellers-Rogers, Malme 1993; 15...♙d6 16 ♞gf3± was essential) 13 ♞gf3 b6 14 0-0 ♙d6 15 ♞ac1, and here in Hellers-Adorjan (Thessaloniki OL 1988) Black could have maintained the balance by 15...♞xe3! 16 fxe3 ♙b7 17 e4 0-0. Therefore 15 ♙d2!± would have been more accurate.

After 10 ♙f4 the bishop again comes under attack by the knight: 10...♞bd5 (if 10...cxd4?! 11 0-0-0 ♞d5 12 ♞b1 ♙d7 13 ♞e5 ♙d6 14 ♞gf3 White has a dangerous initiative) 11 ♙e5 cxd4 12 0-0-0 ♞a5

13 ♖c4 (13 ♜xd4!? ♚xa2 14 c4 comes into consideration, with the initiative for the pawn) 13...♜c3 14 bxc3 ♚a3+ 15 ♜b1 dxc3 16 ♖b5+ ♜d7 17 ♖xc3 ♚xc3 with equal chances (Gipslis-Marovic, Tallinn 1975).

10 ... ♖xc5

The other main continuation 10...♜bd7 is examined in Chapter 6.

11 ♜e5

White puts into effect the main idea of the ♜g5 move. After 12 ♜gf3 and kingside castling, in a quiet position he will be able to count on an enduring initiative, based on the pressure of the knight at e5.

If 11 ♖d2, planning queenside castling, White has to reckon with counterplay on that side of the board:

(a) 11...0-0 12 0-0-0 ♜a4!, with the idea of 13 ♖xh6 ♚b6 14 ♚e5 ♚xb2+, while after 13 ♖b5 ♖d7 14 ♖xd7 ♚xd7 (Kir.Georgiev-Adams, Groningen 1993) Black's chances are preferable, since 15 ♖xh6 ♚c6 16 ♖e3 ♚b6 17 c3 ♖xe3+ 18 fxe3 ♜ac8 rebounds on White;

(b) 11...♚c7 12 0-0-0 0-0 13 ♜e5 ♖d7 (the slow 13...♜bd7 14 f4 b6 15 ♜gf3 ♖b7 16 ♜he1 ♖d6 17 ♜d4! a6 18 ♜b3 ♖d5 19 ♜b1 a5 20 g4 allows White to get his attack in first, Oratovsky-Fridman, Israel 1993) 14 ♜gf3 ♜fc8 15 g4 ♖e7 16 g5 hxg5 17 ♜xg5 ♖b5 18 ♖f4? ♖xd3 19 ♜xd3 ♜fd5 20 ♜f3 ♜xf4 0-1 (A.Ivanov-Karpov, Moscow 1992).

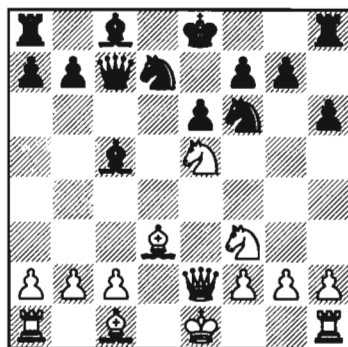
11 ... ♜bd7

12 ♜gf3

Black's main replies are 12...♚c7 (5.1) and 12...♜xe5 (5.2).

5.1 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 dxe4 4 ♜xe4 ♜d7 5 ♖c4 ♜gf6 6 ♜g5 e6 7 ♚e2 ♜b6 8 ♖d3 h6 9 ♜5f3 c5 10 dxc5 ♖xc5 11 ♜e5 ♜bd7 12 ♜gf3)

12 ... ♚c7



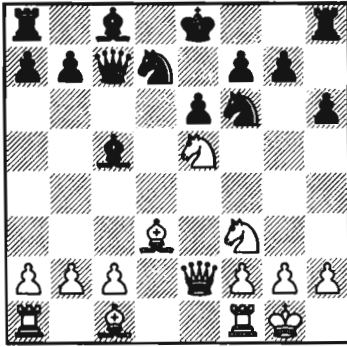
Black fights for control of e5.

Here White's main plans are associated with 13 0-0 (5.11) and 13 ♖f4 (5.12), since the attack on his central knight prevents the plan with queenside castling: 13 ♖d2? ♜xe5 14 ♜xe5 ♖xf2+! 15 ♜xf2 ♚xe5 16 ♚xe5 ♜g4+, and White loses a pawn (Suetin-Kholmov, Budapest 1976).

5.11 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 dxe4 4 ♜xe4 ♜d7 5 ♖c4 ♜gf6 6 ♜g5 e6 7 ♚e2 ♜b6 8 ♖d3 h6 9 ♜5f3 c5 10 dxc5 ♖xc5 11 ♜e5 ♜bd7 12 ♜gf3 ♚c7)

13 0-0





13 ... 0-0

It is important not to overdo the pressure on e5, since after 13...♙d6?! 14 ♗c4 ♙e7 15 ♗d4! Black may not manage to castle, as 15...0-0 is met by the unpleasant 16 ♗f5! At the same time ♗b5 is threatened, and if 15...a6 there follows 16 ♗xe6! (this is where the weakening move ...h7-h6 tells), while after 15...♗c5 16 ♗b5 ♗b8 17 ♗d1 White's pressure is too great (Gufeld-Bagirov, Tallinn 1981) – *Game 21*.

14 ♗e1

White strengthens his control over e5. In the event of 14 ♙f4 ♙d6 it is easier for Black to attack the knight, e.g. 15 h3 ♗xe5 16 ♙xe5 ♙xe5 17 ♗xe5 ♗d7! (weaker is 17...♗d8?! 18 ♗ae1 ♗e7 19 f4±, Martin-Ledger, British Ch 1992) 18 f4 ♗b6+ 19 ♗h2 ♗xb2, although after 20 ♗ad1 White has compensation for the pawn (Martin).

Also insufficient for an advantage is 14 ♙d2 ♙d6 (or 14...♗xe5 15 ♗xe5 ♙d4=) 15 ♗xd7 ♙xd7 16 ♗ae1

♗fd8 17 ♗e5 ♙b5! with equal chances (A.Sokolov-Karpov, match (7), Linares 1987).

14 ... ♙d6

Exchanging a pair of knights does not ease Black's problems: 14...♗xe5 15 ♗xe5 ♗d8 16 ♙f4 b6 17 ♙g3 ♙d6 18 ♗ad1 ♙b7 19 c3 ♗ac8 20 ♙b1 ♙d5 21 ♗d4 ♙c5 22 ♗g4 ♗e7 23 ♗xf6+ ♗xf6 24 ♙e5 with advantage to White, who controls the important central squares (Sznapiak-Spiridonov, Polanica Zdroj 1982).

After 14...b6 15 ♗xd7:

(a) 15...♗xd7 16 ♗e4 ♗f6 17 ♗xa8 (or 17 ♗h4) 17...♙b7 18 ♗xa7 ♗a8 19 ♗xa8+ with advantage to White;

(b) 15...♙xd7 16 ♗e5 ♙c6 (if 16...♗fd8 17 ♗f3) 17 ♗xc6 (17 ♙f4!? ♗fd8 18 ♙g3 ♙d6 19 ♗ad1 ♙b7 20 c3± also comes into consideration) 17...♗xc6 18 ♙f4 and White retains the initiative (Ivanchuk-Karpov, Reykjavik 1991) – *Game 22*.

15 ♗c4

15 ♙f4 can be met by 15...♗xe5 (15...♗h5!? 16 ♙d2 ♗c5 17 ♙c4 ♗f6! also comes into consideration) 16 ♗xe5 b6 17 ♗f3 ♙b7 18 ♗h3 ♗fd8 19 ♗ad1 ♗e4 20 ♙xe4 ♙xe4 with equal chances (Barlov-Radulov, Belgrade 1982).

15 ... ♙e7

16 ♗ce5

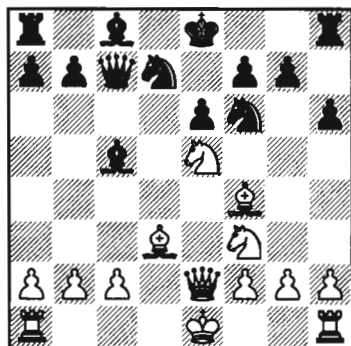
Or 16 ♗d4 ♗c5 with equal chances (Minasian-Vyzhmanavin, Debrecen 1992) – *Game 23*.

Izeta-Karpov (Dos Hermanas 1993) now continued 16...♗c5 17 ♙c4 a6

18 a3 b5 19 ♖a2 ♖b7 20 ♖e3 ♖ce4  
21 ♖d4 ♖ad8 22 c3 ♖c5 with equal  
chances.

5.12 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 dxe4  
4 ♖xe4 ♖d7 5 ♖c4 ♖gf6 6 ♖g5  
e6 7 ♖e2 ♖b6 8 ♖d3 h6 9 ♖f5f3  
c5 10 dxc5 ♖xc5 11 ♖e5 ♖bd7  
12 ♖gf3 ♖c7)

13 ♖f4



This practically forces Black to exchange his dark-square bishop, although White achieves this at the cost of losing the right to castle.

13 ... ♖b4+

In the event of 13... ♖d6 14 ♖g3!  
(insufficient is 14 0-0-0 ♖d5 15 ♖g3  
♖c3 16 bxc3 ♖xc3 17 ♖c4 ♖a1+ 18  
♖d2 ♖b4+ 19 ♖e3 ♖c5+ 20 ♖d2  
♖b4+ ½-½, Chandler-Speelman, Lon-  
don 1986) 14...0-0 15 0-0-0 ♖c5 16  
♖b1 ♖d8 (16... ♖d5 17 c4! ♖b4 18  
♖c2) 17 ♖h4 ♖e7 18 g4 ♖d5 19  
♖xe7 ♖xe7 20 ♖c4 White's position  
is preferable (Stefansson-Vyzhman-  
avin, Lucerne 1993).

14 ♖d2

After 14 ♖f1 ♖d6 15 ♖g3 0-0 16  
♖d1 ♖xe5 17 ♖xe5 ♖d8 18 ♖c4  
♖xg3 19 hxg3 ♖d7 (in the mutual  
flank attacks after 19...b5?! 20 ♖e5  
♖b7 21 ♖e1 b4 22 g4 it is White who  
gets there first: 22... ♖d4 23 g5 hxg5  
24 ♖g6 ♖h7 25 ♖xh7 1-0, Popovic-  
Kosic, Novi Sad 1992) 20 ♖e5 ♖ac8  
the chances are equal (Timman-Kar-  
pov, Amsterdam 1988).

14 ... ♖xd2+

15 ♖xd2 0-0

16 ♖hd1 ♖d5

The active 16... ♖b6 was tried in  
the 1993 FIDE World Championship  
Match, Timman-Karpov. It proved  
justified only after 17 ♖c4?! ♖c5 18  
♖f3 ♖d5 (game 1), but after 17  
♖c1! ♖d5 18 ♖g3 ♖c5 19 ♖c4  
(game 3) White's position was pre-  
ferable.

But then an improvement was  
found: 16... ♖c5 17 ♖e1 ♖d5 18 ♖g3  
♖xd3+ 19 ♖xd3 b5! with equal  
chances (game 7).

17 ♖g3 ♖xe5

17... ♖7f6 can also be considered.

18 ♖xe5

18 ♖xe5 is stronger.

18 ... ♖a5+

19 ♖c1 f6

20 ♖g3 ♖d7

21 c4 ♖b4

If 21... ♖ac8 White gains the  
advantage by 22 ♖c2! ♖b6 23 b3.

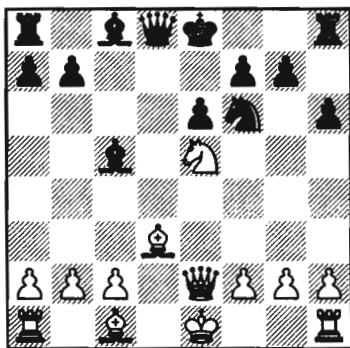
22 ♖b1 ♖a4

23 ♖d2 ♖ad8!

The chances are equal (Topalov-  
Adams, Belgrade 1995).

5.2 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 dxe4  
4 ♜xe4 ♜d7 5 ♙c4 ♜gf6 6 ♜g5  
e6 7 ♚e2 ♜b6 8 ♖d3 h6 9 ♜5f3  
c5 10 dxc5 ♙xc5 11 ♜e5 ♜bd7  
12 ♜gf3)

12 ... ♜xe5  
13 ♜xe5



The exchange of knights makes things more difficult for Black, since it allows White strong piece pressure in the centre, enhancing his attacking chances.

13 ... 0-0

Here 13...♚c7 allows White to gain the advantage of the two bishops in an open position. This is especially appreciable in an ending, since he has the possibility of creating an outside passed pawn on the queenside: 14 ♖b5+! ♖d7 (if 14...♜d7 there follows 15 ♖f4, not fearing 15...♖b4+ in view of the possible typical combination with the sacrifice of both rooks: 16 c3! ♙xc3+ 17 bxc3 ♚xc3+ 18 ♚d2 ♚xa1+ 19 ♚e2 ♚xh1 20 ♖xd7+ and White wins) 15 0-0 0-0

(15...♙xb5 16 ♚xb5+ ♚e7 comes into consideration) 16 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 17 c3 and White's chances are preferable (Blatny-Adams, Adelaide 1988) – Game 24.

14 ♖d2

Preparing the option of castling on both sides. If 14 0-0 Black has the good reply 14...b6!:

(a) 15 ♚f3 ♚c7 16 ♖f4 ♖b7 17 ♜g4 ♙xf3 18 ♜xf6+ gxf6 19 ♙xc7 ♖b7 with an equal game (Hübner-Lobron, Biel 1986);

(b) 15 ♜d1 ♚e7 (also possible is 15...♚c7 16 ♜g4 ♜xg4 17 ♚xg4 f5 with a complicated game) 16 b4 ♖d6 (16...♙xb4? 17 ♜c6 ♚c5 18 ♜xb4 ♚xb4 19 ♚f3±) 17 ♖b2 ♖b7 18 a3 ♜fd8 19 c4 a5 20 b5 ♜ac8 and the chances are again equal (Filip).

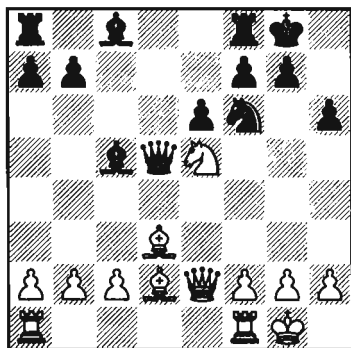
14 ... ♚d5

Here both ways of castling are possible: 15 0-0-0 (5.21) and 15 0-0 (5.22), although they both involve a pawn sacrifice.

If White avoids castling with 15 f4 b5! 16 ♖e3 ♖xe3 17 ♚xe3 ♖b7 18 ♜g1 ♜fd8 19 g4 ♜e4 Black gains equal chances (Tarjan-Rogoff, USA 1985).

5.21 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 dxe4  
4 ♜xe4 ♜d7 5 ♙c4 ♜gf6 6 ♜g5  
e6 7 ♚e2 ♜b6 8 ♖d3 h6 9 ♜5f3  
c5 10 dxc5 ♙xc5 11 ♜e5 ♜bd7  
12 ♜gf3 ♜xe5 13 ♜xe5 0-0 14  
♖d2 ♚d5)

15 0-0



15 ... ♘d4

Or 15...b5 16 ♖h1 ♘b7 17 f4 b4 18 a3 a5 19 axb4 axb4 20 ♖ad1 ♖ad8, and here in Mestel-Speelman (Bath 1987) White could have begun an attack with 21 ♙e1! ♗a2 22 ♙h4 ♙e7 23 f5.

16 ♙f4

The alternative is 16 ♘f3 ♙xb2 17 ♖ab1 ♙a3 18 ♙c3 ♙e7 19 ♖fd1 ♗c6 20 ♙e5 with a strong initiative for the pawn.

16 ... ♙xb2

17 ♖ab1!

This is stronger than 17 ♖ad1 ♗c5 18 c4 ♙d4 19 ♙b1 b6 20 ♖d3 ♙b7 (20...♙a6!? 21 ♖g3 ♘e8! is also good) 21 ♖g3 ♖ad8! 22 h3 ♖fe8! 23 ♙c2 ♖f8, when Black defends successfully (Khalifman-Tukmakov, 54th USSR Ch 1987).

17 ... ♙d4

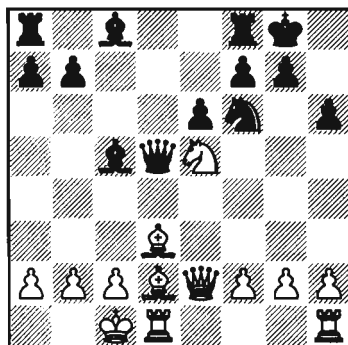
17...♙xe5? is weak: 18 ♙xe5 ♘d7 19 ♖b5 ♗c6 20 ♙xg7! with a strong attack.

Shterengas-Sokolin (USSR 1987) now continued 18 c4 ♗d8 19 ♖fd1

♗e7 20 ♙c2 ♙b6 21 ♗f3 ♙c7 22 ♗h3! with an attack for White.

5.22 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 dxe4 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7 5 ♙c4 ♘gf6 6 ♘g5 e6 7 ♗e2 ♘b6 8 ♙d3 h6 9 ♘5f3 c5 10 dxc5 ♙xc5 11 ♘e5 ♘bd7 12 ♘gf3 ♘xe5 13 ♘xe5 0-0 14 ♙d2 ♗d5)

15 0-0-0



A double-edged plan, which has hitherto been insufficiently explored by the top players.

15 ... ♗xa2

16 c3 b5

In Gaprindashvili-Zaitseva (Tbilisi 1979) Black played 16...♗a1+? 17 ♖c2 ♗a4+ 18 ♖b1 ♖b8 19 ♙c2 ♗a6 20 ♗f3 b5 21 ♙xh6 b4 22 ♙xg7 and lost.

Also inadequate is 16...♙a3 17 ♙e3 ♗a1+ 18 ♙b1, when White's attack is more of a reality.

17 ♙b1!

This is stronger than 17 ♙xh6 ♙b7 (17...gxf6? loses after 18 ♗f3 b4 19

♙b1 ♜a1 20 ♜g3+ ♚h8 21 ♜d8!,  
Bielchik-Sabolshi, Kikinda 1983) 18  
♗d7 ♗xd7 19 ♜g4 ♜a1+ 20 ♙b1 g6  
21 ♜xd7 ♙a3, and now:

(a) 22 bxa3 ♜xc3+ 23 ♚d1 ♜fd8  
24 ♜d2 ♜a1! 25 ♚e2 ♜e5+ 26 ♚d1  
♜a1, forcing a repetition of position  
(Chandler-Speelman, Brighton 1984);

(b) 22 ♜d2 – *Game 25* (Adorjan-  
Flesch, Hungarian Ch 1975).

17 ... ♜a4

Including the queen in the defence  
in the event of 18 ♜d3 ♜h4! 19 h3  
♙b7 20 ♗d7 ♜fd8 21 ♗xf6+ ♜xf6,  
when Black's chances are preferable  
(Reimann-Oll, Tallinn 1986).

If 17...♜a1 there naturally follows  
18 ♙xh6!

18 ♜f3! ♗d5

19 ♜g3 ♚h8

20 ♜he1! b4

20...♗f6? loses to 21 ♙xh6 gxf6  
22 ♜d8! ♗g4 23 ♗xf7+ ♚g7 24 ♜e4  
1-0 (Diaz-Sieiro, Camaguey 1987).

21 ♜e4! ♙e7

Not 21...♙b7? on account of 22  
♙xh6 gxf6 23 ♜h4.

22 ♜g4 g5

Or 22...♙f6 23 ♜d3!

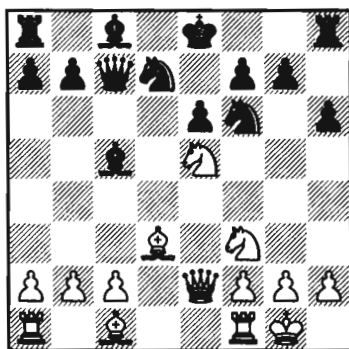
23 h4!

White has a strong attack (Gug-  
mundsson-Torkelsson, corr. 1992).

Game 21  
Gufeld-Bagirov  
Tallinn 1981

1 e4 c6  
2 d4 d5  
3 ♗d2 dxe4

4 ♗xe4 ♗d7  
5 ♙c4 ♗gf6  
6 ♗g5 e6  
7 ♜e2 ♗b6  
8 ♙d3 h6  
9 ♗5f3 c5  
10 dxc5 ♙xc5  
11 ♗e5 ♗bd7  
12 ♗gf3 ♜c7  
13 0-0



13 ... ♙d6?!

An imperceptible inaccuracy, the  
drawbacks of which were disclosed in  
this game. 13...0-0 is the main  
continuation.

14 ♗c4 ♙e7

15 ♗d4! ♗c5

16 ♗b5 ♜b8

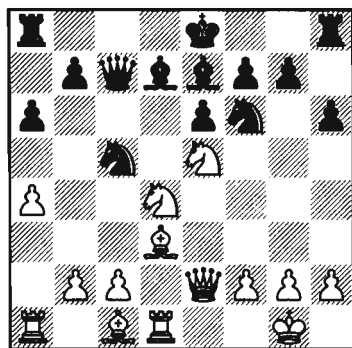
After 16...♜d8 17 ♜d1! a knight  
nevertheless penetrates to d6:  
17...♗xd3 18 ♜xd3 ♗d5 19 ♗cd6+!  
♙xd6 20 ♜xd5, securing White the  
advantage.

17 ♜d1 ♙d7

18 a4! a6

19 ♗d4 ♜c7

20 ♗e5!



The knight has triumphantly returned to e5 – White's positional advantage is obvious.

- |    |      |      |
|----|------|------|
| 20 | ...  | ♘xd3 |
| 21 | ♗xd3 | ♗d8  |
| 22 | ♙f4  | ♗c5  |
| 23 | ♗ad1 | ♘d5  |
| 24 | ♗h5! |      |

Preventing 24...0-0, when there follows 25 ♙xh6! ♘f6 26 ♗g5 ♘e8 27 ♗g3, with an attack and an extra pawn for White.

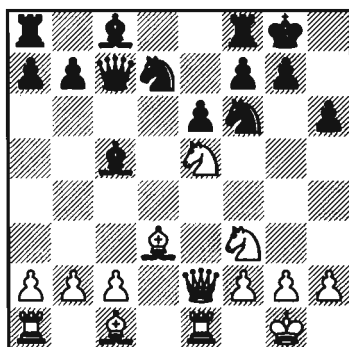
- |    |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|
| 24 | ... | g6  |
| 25 | ♗f3 | ♗h7 |
| 26 | ♙g3 | ♙c8 |
| 27 | c3! | a5  |

Preventing b2-b4, which was possible after 27...♘f6 28 b4! ♗d5 29 ♘dc6 with advantage to White. But now he is able to make a decisive invasion at b5.

- |    |       |      |
|----|-------|------|
| 28 | ♘b5   | g5   |
| 29 | c4    | ♘f4  |
| 30 | ♗xd8+ | ♙xd8 |
| 31 | ♙xf4  | gxf4 |
| 32 | ♗d3   | ♙b6  |
| 33 | ♘d6+  | 1-0  |

Game 22  
Ivanchuk-Karpov  
Reykjavik 1991

- |    |       |      |
|----|-------|------|
| 1  | e4    | c6   |
| 2  | d4    | d5   |
| 3  | ♘c3   | dxe4 |
| 4  | ♘xe4  | ♘d7  |
| 5  | ♙c4   | ♘gf6 |
| 6  | ♘g5   | e6   |
| 7  | ♗e2   | ♘b6  |
| 8  | ♙d3   | h6   |
| 9  | ♘5f3  | c5   |
| 10 | dx c5 | ♙xc5 |
| 11 | ♘e5   | ♘bd7 |
| 12 | ♘gf3  | ♗c7  |
| 13 | 0-0   | 0-0  |
| 14 | ♗e1   |      |



- |       |      |                 |
|-------|------|-----------------|
| 14    | ...  | b6              |
| 14... | ♙d6  | is more active. |
| 15    | ♘xd7 | ♙xd7            |
| 16    | ♘e5  | ♙c6             |
| 17    | ♘xc6 | ♗xc6            |
| 18    | ♙f4  | ♗ad8            |

Black can consider 18...♙b4 19 c3 ♙e7 20 ♗ad1 ♗a4!?, fighting for the d-file: 21 ♙e5 ♗ad8 (Karpov).

19 ♖ad1 ♙d6

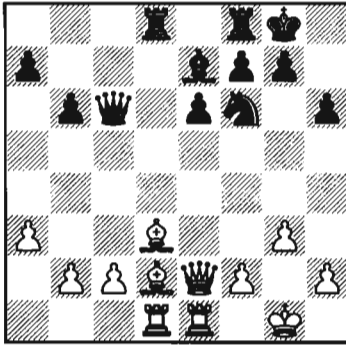
20 ♙d2 ♖c7

21 g3 ♖c6

21... ♙e7!? 22 ♙c3 ♖d5 23 ♙c4

♖c5 was more subtle (Karpov).

22 a3 ♙e7



23 ♙c3

White has a classic advantage, first formulated by Steinitz – a pawn majority on the queenside and the possibility of creating there an outside passed pawn. Therefore in the spirit of the position was 23 c4! ♖a4 (or 23...a5 24 ♙c3 a4 25 ♙c2 ♖c8 26 ♖d4±) 24 ♙c1 ♖c8 25 ♖f3 ♘h8 26 ♙f1 with the idea of continuing b2-b3 and ♙b2, when White's chances are preferable.

23 ... ♖c7

24 ♙e5 ♙d6

25 ♙c3

Insufficient is 25 ♙xf6 gxf6 26 ♖g4+ ♘h8 27 ♖d4 ♙e7 28 ♖h4 ♘g7 29 ♖g4+ ♘h8 30 ♖h5 ♘g7 31 ♖xe6 ♖xd3! with equal chances (Karpov).

25 ... ♙e7

26 ♙c4

Here too White could have tried to use his queenside pawn majority: 26 ♖f3!? ♘d7 27 b4 ♙f6 28 ♙xf6 ♘xf6 29 c4.

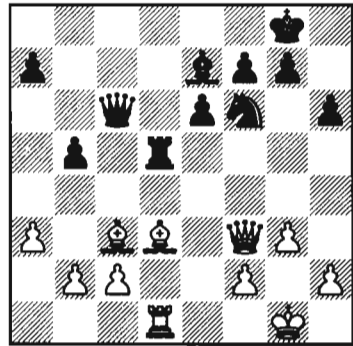
26 ... ♖c6

27 ♖d3 ♖xd3

28 ♙xd3 ♖d8

29 ♖d1 ♖d5

30 ♖f3 b5



Black has finally managed to equalise.

31 ♖e1 ♖d7

32 ♖e5 ♙f8!

33 ♖xd5 ♘xd5

34 ♖e4 f5

35 ♖d4 a6

36 ♙d2 ♙e7!

37 ♖e5 ♙f6

38 ♖b8+ ♘f7

39 ♖a8 ♖d6

40 b3 ♙c3

It is useful to exchange the dark-square bishops, but it was better to do this by 40...♙g5! 41 ♙xg5 hxg5, when the initiative passes to Black.

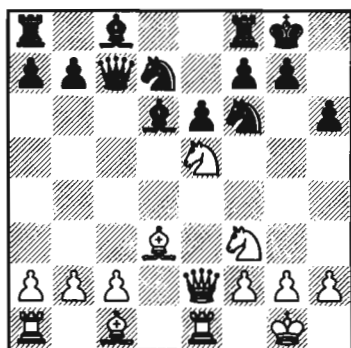
41 ♙xc3 ♘xc3

42 ♖c8 ♘d5

43 b4 ♘e7  
 44 ♖b7 ♗f6  
 45 ♙f1 ½-½

Game 23  
 Minasian-Vyzhmanavin  
 Debrecen 1992

1 e4 c6  
 2 d4 d5  
 3 ♘c3 dxe4  
 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7  
 5 ♙c4 ♘gf6  
 6 ♘g5 e6  
 7 ♖e2 ♘b6  
 8 ♙d3 h6  
 9 ♘f5f3 c5  
 10 dxc5 ♙xc5  
 11 ♘e5 ♘bd7  
 12 ♘gf3 ♖c7  
 13 0-0 0-0  
 14 ♙e1 ♙d6



15 ♘c4

If 15 ♙f4 White has to reckon with  
 15... ♘h5!? 16 ♙d2 ♘c5.

15 ... ♙e7  
 16 ♘d4

If 16 ♘c5 Black can return his  
 bishop to d6 or else play 16... ♘c5.

16 ... ♘c5  
 17 ♘b5 ♖d8  
 18 ♙d1 ♙d7  
 19 a4?!

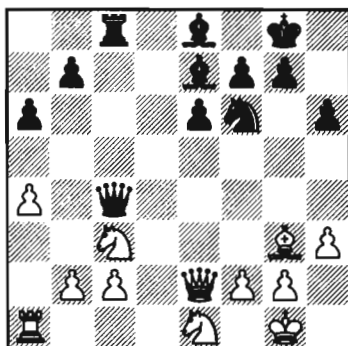
19 ♘c3 was stronger.

19 ... a6  
 20 ♘c3

20 ♘bd6 can be met by  
 20... ♘d5! ♚.

20 ... ♖c7  
 21 ♘e5 ♙fd8  
 22 ♙f4 ♙e8  
 23 ♙g3 ♘xd3  
 24 ♙xd3 ♙xd3  
 25 ♘xd3 ♖c4  
 26 h3 ♙c8  
 27 ♘e1?

This loses a pawn in an already  
 equal position. 27 ♙e5 was correct,  
 occupying the key square in his  
 variation.

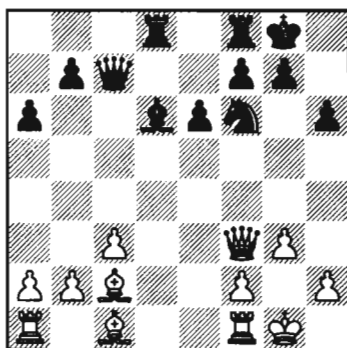


27 ... ♙b4!  
 28 ♖f3 ♙xc3  
 29 ♖xc3 ♖xc3  
 30 bxc3 ♘e4



31 ♙e5 f6  
 32 ♙d4 ♘c3  
 33 ♙xc3 ♙xc3  
 34 ♖a2 a5  
 35 ♖f1 ♙c4  
 36 ♖b2 ♙c6  
 37 ♘d3 ♙xa4  
 38 ♘c5 ♖a1+  
 39 ♖e2 a4  
 40 ♘xe6 a3  
 41 ♖b3 0-1

20 ♙f3! ♙d6  
 21 g3



Game 24  
 Blatny-Adams  
 Adelaide 1988

1 e4 c6  
 2 d4 d5  
 3 ♘c3 dxe4  
 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7  
 5 ♙c4 ♘gf6  
 6 ♘g5 e6  
 7 ♙e2 ♘b6  
 8 ♙d3 h6  
 9 ♘5f3 c5  
 10 dxc5 ♙xc5  
 11 ♘e5 ♘bd7  
 12 ♘gf3 ♘xe5  
 13 ♘xe5 ♙c7?!

This allows White to gain the advantage of the two bishops. The main move here is 13...0-0.

14 ♙b5+! ♙d7  
 15 0-0 0-0

15...♙xb5 16 ♙xb5+ ♖e7 comes into consideration.

16 ♘xd7 ♘xd7  
 17 c3 ♙ad8  
 18 ♙a4 a6  
 19 ♙c2 ♘f6

21 ... ♙e5?!

The position is one where Black has to reckon with his opponent setting up an outside passed pawn on the queenside, and therefore exchanges, bringing the endgame nearer, are unfavourable for him. On the other hand, there is still the threat of an attack on the kingside, on which the white bishops are trained. In this respect 21...♘d5 22 ♙e4 ♘f6 23 ♙h4 ♙e7 is more accurate.

22 ♙e1 ♙fe8  
 23 a4 ♙d5  
 24 ♙b3 ♙dd8  
 25 a5 ♘d7  
 26 ♙a4 ♙xa5?

Exchanges aid White's aforementioned plan. 26...♙e7 27 ♙c2 ♘c5 is a tougher defence, although after 28 ♙e3 White retains the advantage.

27 ♙xb7! ♙e7

Black has to go voluntarily into a pin, as after 27...♘c5 White gains a

material advantage by the tactical manoeuvre 28 ♖xf7+! ♔xf7 29 ♙xe8+ ♚xe8 30 ♚xa5.

28 ♙e3 ♚b8

29 ♖a7

Taking the game into the technical stage.

29 ... ♖c7

30 ♖xc7 ♙xc7

31 ♚ed1 ♚d8

32 b4 f5

33 ♙xd7 ♚xd7

34 ♚xd7 ♚xd7

35 ♚xa6 e5

36 ♔g2 g5

37 ♙b6 ♙d6

44 f3 e4

45 fxe4+ ♔xe4

46 b5 ♔d5

47 b6 ♔c6

48 ♙d4 ♙e7

49 c4 ♙d8

50 c5 ♙e7

51 ♔f3 ♙f8

52 ♔e4 ♙e7

53 ♔f5 ♙f8

54 ♔e6! f3

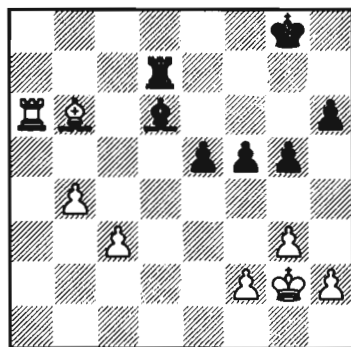
55 b7 ♔c7

56 c6 ♙d6

57 b8♖+ ♔xb8

58 ♔xd6 ♔c8

59 ♙b6 1-0



38 ♚a8+

After the exchange of rooks by 38 ♚a7! ♚xa7 39 ♙xa7 ♔f7 40 b5 ♔e6 41 c4! White would have won more quickly.

38 ... ♔f7

39 ♚d8 ♚xd8

40 ♙xd8 ♔e6

41 h3! ♔d5

42 g4 f4

43 ♙f6 ♙f8

### Game 25

Adorjan-Flesch

Hungarian Ch 1975

1 e4 c6

2 d4 d5

3 ♘c3 dxe4

4 ♘xe4 ♘d7

5 ♙c4 ♘gf6

6 ♘g5 e6

7 ♖e2 ♘b6

8 ♙d3 h6

9 ♘5f3 c5

10 dxc5 ♙xc5

11 ♘e5 ♘bd7

12 ♘gf3 ♘xe5

13 ♘xe5 0-0

14 ♙d2 ♖d5

15 0-0-0

A double-edged plan. The quiet 15 0-0 is less risky for White.

15 ... ♖xa2

16 c3 b5

17 ♙xh6

White is drawn into forcing play.

More subtle is 17 ♙b1! ♚a4 18 ♚f3!  
(18 ♚d3 ♚h4!) 18...♘d5 19 ♚g3.

17 ... ♙b7

17...gxh6? loses to 18 ♚f3.

18 ♘d7

A diversionary manoeuvre. If 18 ♙b1 Black defends by 18...♚a4!

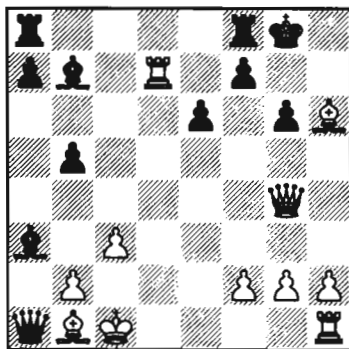
18 ... ♘xd7

If 18...♚a1+ 19 ♙b1 ♘e4 White has the decisive 20 ♙xg7! ♘xg7 21 ♘xc5 ♘xc5 22 ♚g4+.

19 ♚g4 ♚a1+

20 ♙b1 g6

21 ♚xd7 ♙a3



One cannot help asking: who is attacking who?

22 ♚d2?

It transpires that both White and Black should have been satisfied with perpetual check after 22 bxa3 ♚xc3+.

22 ... ♚fd8?

An exchange of mistakes, after which the picture again changes. After 22...♚fc8! 23 ♚d4 ♙f8 24 ♙xf8 ♚xf8 Black would have parried the opponent's threats, while maintaining his own (Adorjan).

23 bxa3 ♚xc3+

24 ♘d1 ♚xd2+

Now White succeeds in defending his king. 24...♙d5!/? came into consideration.

25 ♙xd2 ♚d8

26 ♚g5 ♙f3+

27 gxf3 ♚xf3+

28 ♘c2 ♚c8+?

In such a mêlée it is not surprising that mistakes are made. After 28...♚d3+! 29 ♘c1 ♚xa3+ Black would have held on.

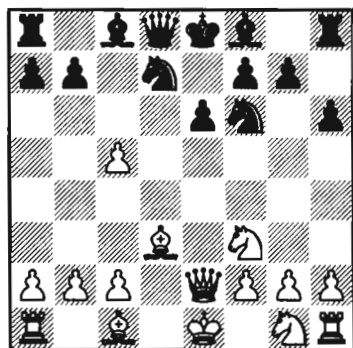
29 ♘b2 ♚xh1

30 ♙xg6! ♚xh2

31 ♙h5+ 1-0

## 6: 10...♞bd7

1	e4	c6
2	d4	d5
3	♟c3	dxe4
4	♞xe4	♞d7
5	♙c4	♞gf6
6	♞g5	e6
7	♚e2	♞b6
8	♙d3	h6
9	♞5f3	c5
10	dxc5	♞bd7



This move was devised by Smyslov. The idea of retreating the knight, which involves a pawn sacrifice, is to gain the possibility of capturing on c5 with knight or queen.

The simple 11 ♙f4 can be met by 11...♞xc5 12 ♙b5+ ♙d7 13 0-0-0 ♚a5 14 ♙xd7+ ♞cxd7 15 ♟b1 ♙e7= (Henaó-Isaacs, St Martin 1992).

11 ♞e5 is also insufficient for an advantage: 11...♞xe5 12 ♚xe5 ♚a5+ (12...♞d7 13 ♚e2 ♞xc5 14 ♙b5+ ♙d7= is also possible) 13 ♙d2 ♚xc5

14 ♞f3 ♚xe5+ 15 ♞xe5 ♙c5 (or 15...♙d6) 16 ♙b5+ ♚e7 with an equal ending (Parma-Smyslov, Lugano OL 1968) – *Game 4*.

Of course, White can spoil the opponent's pawn structure by 11 c6 bxc6, but this allows Black to begin active piece play: 12 ♙d2 (or 12 ♞d2 ♞d5! 13 ♞e4 ♞e5) 12...♚b6! 13 b3 ♙a3! 14 ♙e3 (14 ♞h3 g5!) 14...♚a5+ 15 ♙d2 ♚b6 with an equal game (Przewoznik-Sapis, Poland 1988).

White's critical decision is of course to defend his extra pawn, despite the obvious defects of his queenside pawn structure.

### 11 b4

Here Black's counterplay is associated with 11...b6 (6.1), 11...a5 (6.2) or 11...♞d5 (6.3).

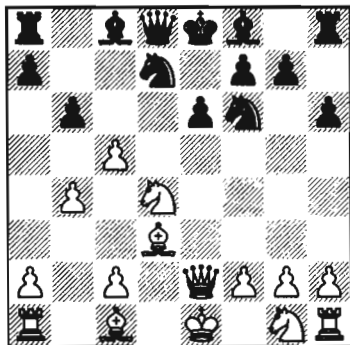
6.1 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♟c3 dxe4 4 ♞xe4 ♞d7 5 ♙c4 ♞gf6 6 ♞g5 e6 7 ♚e2 ♞b6 8 ♙d3 h6 9 ♞5f3 c5 10 dxc5 ♞bd7 11 b4)

### 11 ... b6

This obvious frontal attack weakens the c6 square and allows White to activate his knight.

### 12 ♞d4

This active move is based on the fact that Black cannot simply capture the pawn: 12...bxc5?? 13 ♞c6 ♚c7 14 ♚xe6+! fxe6 15 ♙g6 mate! (Perenji-Eperjesi, Hungary 1984).



Also after 12...♖xc5 White gains an advantage practically by force: 13 ♖b5+ ♗cd7 14 a3 ♖b7 (14...♙c7 15 ♖b2 a6 16 ♖c4!±) 15 ♗gf3 ♖e7 16 ♖b2 a6 (16...0-0 17 ♗xe6!) 17 ♖d3 0-0, and here in Kasparov-Bagirov (Tbilisi 1978) White could have built up a powerful attack by 18 ♗xe6! ♖xf3 19 gxf3 fxe6 20 ♙xe6+ ♗h8 21 0-0-0 ♙c7 22 ♚hg1 ♙f4+ 23 ♗b1 ♚ae8 24 ♙xd7!± (Kasparov).

Black usually plays 12...♗d5 (6.11) or 12...♙c7 (6.12).

6.11 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♗c3 dxe4 4 ♗xe4 ♗d7 5 ♖c4 ♗gf6 6 ♗g5 e6 7 ♙e2 ♗b6 8 ♖d3 h6 9 ♗f5f3 c5 10 dxc5 ♖bd7 11 b4 b6 12 ♗d4)

12 ... ♗d5

In attacking the b4 pawn Black loses time, and the e6 square remains his Achilles' heel.

13 ♖b2 ♗xb4

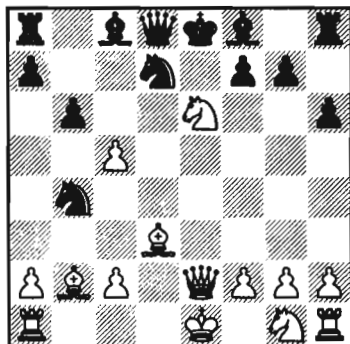
14 ♗xe6!

This sacrifice, analysed by Sap-

firov, is promising, although it has not been tried in practice. Other moves allow Black to maintain the balance:

14 ♖e4 ♖a6 – cf. *Game 26* (Van der Wiel-Balashov, Malta OL 1980).

14 c6?! ♗xd3+ 15 ♙xd3 ♗c5 16 ♙f3 ♗a4 17 0-0-0 ♗xb2 (or 17...♙g5+ 18 ♗b1 ♗xb2) 18 ♗xb2 ♙c7 and Black's chances are preferable (Tsheshkovsky-Razuvaev, Volgondsk 1981).



14 ... ♗xd3+

If White retains his bishop he gains a strong attack: 14...fxe6 15 ♖g6+ ♗e7 16 ♙f3! bxc5 17 ♙xa8 ♙a5 18 0-0-0! ♗b6 19 ♙f3 ♗xa2+ 20 ♗b1 ♖d7 21 ♙f7+ ♗d8 22 ♗f3±.

15 ♙xd3 ♙e7

Or 15...fxe6 16 ♙g6+ ♗e7 17 c6 ♙e8 18 ♙g3 ♗c5 19 ♙c7+ ♖d7 20 0-0-0±.

16 0-0-0 fxe6

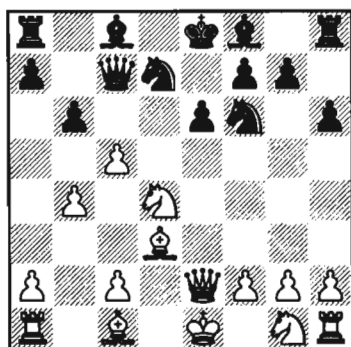
16...♙xe6 is dangerous: 17 ♗f3 ♖e7 18 ♚he1±.

Now after 17 ♙e4 ♚b8 18 c6 ♗c5 19 ♙g6+ ♙f7 20 c7 ♚a8 21 ♚d8+ ♗e7 22 ♙xf7+ ♗xf7 23 ♗f3 ♗a6 24

♟e5+ Black cannot develop without losing material.

6.12 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♞c3 dxe4  
4 ♞xe4 ♟d7 5 ♟c4 ♟g6 6 ♟g5  
e6 7 ♚e2 ♟b6 8 ♟d3 h6 9 ♟f3  
c5 10 dxc5 ♟bd7 11 b4 b6 12  
♟d4)

12 ... ♚c7



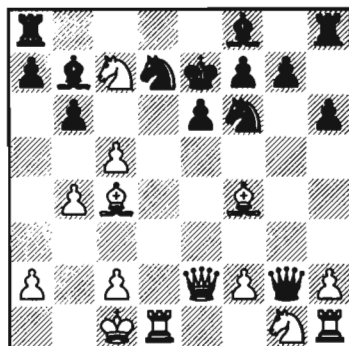
Black maintains the tension, but allows himself to be drawn into forcing play.

13 ♟b5 ♚c6  
14 ♟f4 ♚xg2  
15 0-0-0 ♟b7

White's pieces are impending over the black king's position, and therefore 15...♚xh1 is not possible on account of 16 ♟c7+ ♟d8 17 ♟f3 ♚g2 18 ♚g1 ♚h3 19 ♟d4.

16 ♟c7+ ♟e7  
17 ♟c4!

This is more energetic than 17 ♟f5 ♟e4 18 ♟xe4 ♟xe4 19 f3 ♚xe2 20 ♟xe2 ♟xf3 21 ♟xa8 ♟xa8 22 ♟d6± (Fodor-Veress, corr. 1983).



17 ... ♚e4  
18 ♚xe4 ♟xe4  
19 ♟b5! ♚d8  
20 c6 ♟xf2

Or 20...♟xc6 21 ♟xc6 ♟xf2 22 ♟f3! and Black cannot develop without losing material.

Christiansen-Saidy (USA 1975) now continued 21 ♚xd7+! ♚xd7 22 cxb7 ♚d1+ 23 ♟b2 ♚d8, when White could have won by 24 ♟e8! e5 25 ♟xe5 ♟e6 26 ♟c7.

6.2 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♞c3 dxe4  
4 ♞xe4 ♟d7 5 ♟c4 ♟g6 6 ♟g5  
e6 7 ♚e2 ♟b6 8 ♟d3 h6 9 ♟f3  
c5 10 dxc5 ♟bd7 11 b4)

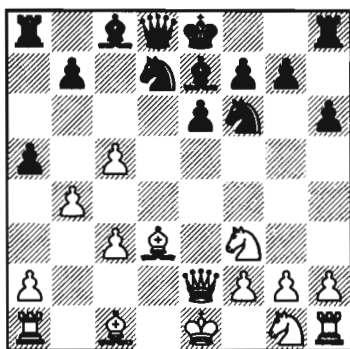
11 ... a5

This attack on the pawns is more justified, since Black has the additional resource of opening the a-file.

12 c3 ♟e7

12...axb4 13 cxb4 b6 is premature: 14 ♟d4! ♟xc5 15 ♟b5+ ♟cd7 16 ♟d2 ♟b7 17 ♟g3 with an unpleasant

pin (Rajhman-Leman, Wolfsberg 1985).



13 a3

It is useful to over-protect the b4 pawn in the event of ...b7-b6. 13 ♖d2!? pursues the same aim, but attempts to activate White's pieces merely create problems for him:

13 ♖c4?! 0-0 14 ♖h3 axb4 15 cxb4 b6 and the pawn structure crumbles in favour of Black (Lukov-Meduna, Varna 1983).

13 ♖d4 0-0 14 ♖gf3 (14 ♖b2 axb4 15 cxb4 e5!) 14...e5 and Black firmly seizes the initiative (Martin-Meduna, Bad Wörishofen 1988) – *Game 27*.

13 ... ♖d5

14 ♖d2 axb4

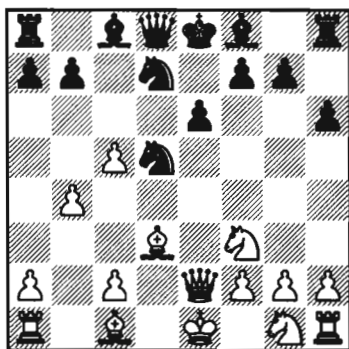
In the event of 14...♖f6 15 ♖c1 axb4 16 axb4 White controls the situation on the queenside.

15 cxb4 ♖f6

Now after 16 ♖a2 ♖c3 17 ♖xc3 ♖xc3+ 18 ♖f1 ♖f6 Black has some compensation for the pawn (he threatens 19...♖xb4).

6.3 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 dxe4 4 ♖xe4 ♖d7 5 ♖c4 ♖gf6 6 ♖g5 e6 7 ♖e2 ♖b6 8 ♖d3 h6 9 ♖5f3 c5 10 dxc5 ♖bd7 11 b4)

11 ... ♖d5



Before beginning an attack on the pawns, Black activates his pieces.

12 ♖d2 ♖f6

The inclusion of 12...a5 13 c3 is less effective: 13...♖f6 14 ♖c1 axb4 15 cxb4 ♖f4 16 ♖xf4 ♖xf4 17 ♖b1 g5 18 ♖c2 and Black has no compensation for the pawn (Hübner-Lein, Chicago 1982).

In Geller-Spelman (Sochi 1982) Black chose 12...g5 13 c4 ♖f4 14 ♖xf4 gxf4, and after 15 ♖d1 a5 16 a3 ♖f6 White did not achieve anything. But, as shown by Velickovic, by playing 15 ♖b1! a5 16 a3 axb4 17 axb4 ♖g7 18 ♖h3 ♖c3+ 19 ♖f1 ♖f6 20 g3 he could have retained an advantage.

13 ♖b1 a5

14 a3 g5

After 14...♖c3? 15 ♖xc3 ♖xc3+

16 ♖d2 ♖xa3 17 ♜b5! Black comes under an unpleasant pin.

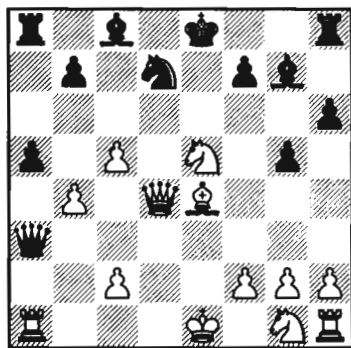
15 ♜e4 ♟c3  
16 ♜xc3 ♖xc3+  
17 ♖d2 ♖xa3

In the event of 17...♟g7?! 18 ♟e2 ♖xd2+ 19 ♟xd2 axb4 20 axb4 f5 21 ♜d3 ♟e5 22 ♟c4 the position is simplified to White's advantage (Dimitrov-Todorovic, Primorsko 1988).

18 ♖d4 e5

The queen sacrifice 18...♞g8?! 19 ♞a1 axb4 20 ♞xa3 bxa3 favours White: 21 ♟e2 a2 22 ♟d2 ♟g7 23 ♖b4!± (Am.Rodriguez-Tal, Subotica IZ 1987).

19 ♟xe5 ♟g7  
20 ♞a1



20 ... axb4!  
21 ♞xa3 bxa3  
22 ♟gf3 0-0

22...a2 23 ♟d2 0-0 followed by ...♞e8 also comes into consideration.

23 ♜d5 g4!  
24 ♜xf7+ ♞xf7  
25 ♖d5 gx3!

After 25...♟xe5? 26 ♟xe5 ♜xe5

27 ♖xe5 ♞a6 28 0-0 a2 29 ♞a1 White has the advantage (Mestel-Flear, British Ch 1988).

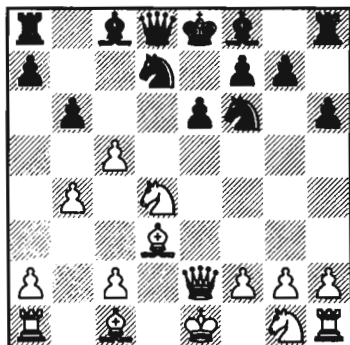
26 ♖xf7+ ♟h8

Now after 27 ♖e8+ ♟h7 28 ♖g6+ the chances are equal (Flear).

### Game 26

Van der Wiel-Balashov  
Malta Olympiad 1980

1	e4	c6
2	d4	d5
3	♟d2	dx4
4	♟xe4	♟d7
5	♜c4	♟gf6
6	♟g5	e6
7	♖e2	♟b6
8	♜d3	h6
9	♟f5	c5
10	dx5	♟bd7
11	b4	b6
12	♟d4	



12 ... ♟d5

A questionable move, although it has given Black reasonable results in practice. 12...♖c7 looks more natural.



13 ♖b2 ♜xb4

14 ♖e4

The evaluation of this variation largely depends on the evaluation of the knight sacrifice 14 ♜xe6!? analysed by Sapfirov.

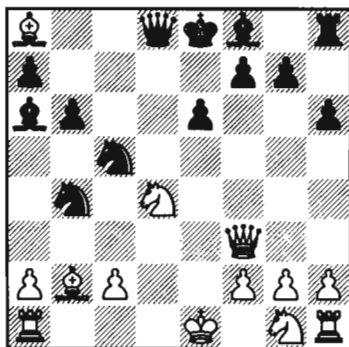
14 ... ♗a6

15 ♜f3 ♜xc5

15...♗xc5! is stronger, not fearing 16 ♜xe6?! fxe6 17 ♖g6+ ♜e7 18 ♜f7+ ♜d6.

16 ♖xa8?

Now Black's well mobilised pieces develop a strong attack. It was still possible to simplify the position by 16 ♜c6! ♜xe4 17 ♜xd8 ♜xc2+ 18 ♜d1 ♜xd8+ 19 ♜xc2, although after 19...♗d3+ the activity of Black's pieces gives him the better chances.



16 ... ♜xc2+!

17 ♜xc2 ♜d3+

18 ♜d2 ♜xb2+

19 ♜c1 ♜d3+

20 ♜b1 ♖c5

21 ♜h3 0-0

After these fireworks Black is a rook down, but on the other hand

White's 'castles' are stuck in their corners.

22 ♖e4 ♜e5!

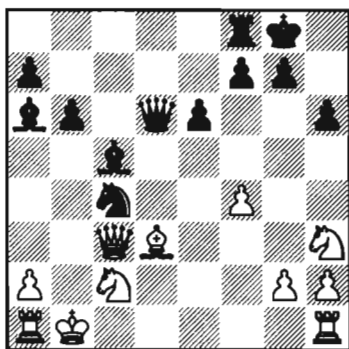
23 ♜c3 ♜d6

24 f4

White should have brought up his rook: 24 ♖f3 ♖d3 25 ♜d1, although after 25...♖b4! the attack continues.

24 ... ♜c4

25 ♖d3



25 ... ♜a3+!

26 ♜xa3 ♖xd3+

27 ♜c2 ♖b4

28 ♜b3 ♜c8

29 ♜d1 ♜c3

30 ♜f2 ♜xb3+

31 axb3 ♖xc2+

32 ♜xc2 ♜c5+

0-1

Game 27

Martin-Meduna

Bad Wörishofen 1988

1 e4 c6

2 d4 d5

3 ♜d2 dxe4

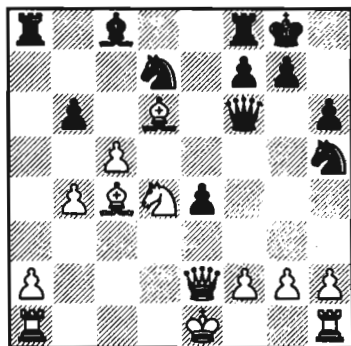
4 ♖xe4 ♘d7  
 5 ♙c4 ♘gf6  
 6 ♘g5 e6  
 7 ♚e2 ♘b6  
 8 ♙d3 h6  
 9 ♘5f3 c5  
 10 dxc5 ♘bd7  
 11 b4 a5  
 12 c3 ♙e7  
 13 ♘d4

White should lend additional support to the b4 pawn by 13 a3 or 13 ♙d2.

13 ... 0-0  
 14 ♘gf3 e5  
 15 ♘f5 e4  
 16 ♘xe7+

Or 16 ♙xe4 ♘xe4 17 ♚xe4 ♙xc5!  
 18 0-0 ♘f6 and Black has the initiative.

16 ... ♚xe7  
 17 ♙c4 axb4  
 18 cxb4 b6  
 19 ♙f4 ♘h5  
 20 ♙d6 ♚f6  
 21 ♘d4



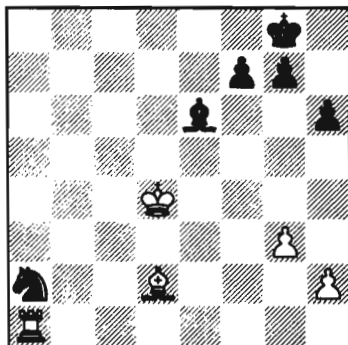
21 ... ♚xd4?

After doing well up to this point, Black unexpectedly falls for the bait. He should first have prepared the gathering of the 'harvest': 21...bxc5! 22 bxc5 ♚xd4 23 0-0 ♘xc5 24 ♚ad1 ♘d3, after which White stands badly.

22 0-0 ♘e5  
 23 ♚xb5 ♘xc4  
 24 ♚fd1 ♘d2?

An over-committing move, which leaves the knight 'hanging'. Stronger was 24...♚f6! 25 ♙xf8 e3 26 ♚e2 ♚xf2+ 27 ♚xf2 exf2+ 28 ♚xf2 ♚xf8 29 cxb6 ♘xb6 30 ♚d6!± (Martin).

25 ♙xf8 e3  
 26 ♚e2! exf2+  
 27 ♚xf2 ♚xf2+  
 28 ♚xf2 ♘e4+  
 29 ♚e3 ♙b7  
 30 ♙e7 bxc5  
 31 ♚d8+ ♚xd8  
 32 ♙xd8 cxb4  
 33 ♚d4 ♘c3  
 34 g3 ♙c8  
 35 ♙a5 ♙e6  
 36 ♙xb4 ♘xa2  
 37 ♙d2



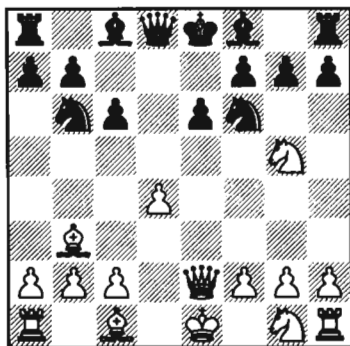
After his incorrect 24...♗d2?  
 Black has picked up as much material  
 as possible, but he is obliged to play  
 without his knight at a2.

37 ... ♗g5  
 38 ♔e5 ♗g7  
 39 ♖f1 ♗g6

40 ♖f6+ ♗g7  
 41 h4 ♗h7  
 42 ♖xe6! fxe6  
 43 h5 ♗g8  
 44 ♗xe6 ♗h8  
 45 ♗f6 1-0

# 7: 8 ♖b3 h6 9 ♘5f3 a5

- |   |      |      |
|---|------|------|
| 1 | e4   | c6   |
| 2 | d4   | d5   |
| 3 | ♟c3  | dxe4 |
| 4 | ♞xe4 | ♞d7  |
| 5 | ♙c4  | ♞gf6 |
| 6 | ♞g5  | e6   |
| 7 | ♚e2  | ♞b6  |
| 8 | ♖b3  |      |



On the a2-g8 diagonal the bishop has no less a future than on the adjacent one, especially as the d4 pawn is immune (8...♚xd4? 9 ♞1f3 and 10 ♞e5).

8 ... h6

Here too there is no point in delaying this move. The flank operation 8...a5 9 c3! (there is no point in obstinately maintaining the bishop's diagonal: 9 a3 a4 10 ♙a2 c5 11 dxc5 ♙xc5 12 ♞1f3 ♚e7 13 0-0 14 ♞e5 h6 15 ♞gf3 ♞bd7 16 ♞d3 ♙d6 17 ♚e1 ♚e8 18 ♙d2 e5! =, Suetin-Wilson, Berlin 1991) 9...a4 10

♙c2 a3 11 b3 ♞bd5 12 ♙d2 ♙d6 undertaken in Kasparov-Speelman (Linares 1992) does not bring Black any particular gains. White could have gained an advantage by 13 ♞e4.

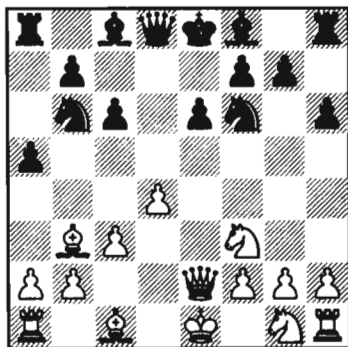
9 ♞5f3 a5

9...c5 is examined in Chapter 8.

Here the main continuations are 10 c3 (7.1), 10 a3 (7.2) and 10 a4 (7.3).

7.1 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♟c3 dxe4 4 ♞xe4 ♞d7 5 ♙c4 ♞gf6 6 ♞g5 e6 7 ♚e2 ♞b6 8 ♖b3 h6 9 ♞5f3 a5)

10 c3



White prepares to withdraw his bishop onto the b1-h7 diagonal.

10 ... c5

An important moment. Black is not averse to winning an important tempo by ...c5-c4, and therefore he does not hurry with the natural 10...a4 11 ♙c2:

(a) 11...a3 12 b3 c5 13 ♖d2 ♜c7 14 ♜c1 ♖d6 15 ♘e5 0-0 16 ♘gf3 cxd4 17 cxd4±, and the further advance of Black's pawns has in fact restricted his possibilities on the queenside (Matkovic-B.Nikolic, Yugoslav Ch 1991);

(b) 11...c5 12 dxc5 ♖xc5, when Black has to reckon with the loss of a pawn after 13 ♜b5+ ♘bd7 14 ♖xa4, or positional pressure by 13 ♘e5 ♜c7 14 ♘gf3 ♘bd7 15 ♖f4!;

(c) 11...♘bd5 12 ♖d2 ♜b6! 13 ♜b1 c5 14 dxc5 ♖xc5 15 ♘e5 0-0 16 ♘gf3 ♜c7 17 0-0 b6 18 ♜bc1 ♖b7 with an equal game (Anand-Epishin, Biel IZ 1993), but here too improvements for White are possible, e.g. 18 ♖d3!? ♖b7 19 ♘d4 with slightly the better chances.

### 11 a3

J.Polgar-Gulko (Moscow OL 1994) went 11 ♖d2 a4 12 ♖c2 ♜c7 13 ♜c1 ♖d6 14 ♘e5 ♘bd5 (aiming at c3; Black is already threatening ...a4-a3) 15 a3 b6 16 ♘gf3 0-0 17 c4 ♘e7 18 ♖c3 cxd4 19 ♖xd4 ♖b7 20 0-0 ♘c6 21 ♖c3 ♜fd8 22 ♜fd1 ♘xe5 23 ♘xe5 ♖c5 24 ♖h1 ♖xd1+ 25 ♖xd1 ♜d8 with an equal game.

### 11 ... ♜c7!

An important move, controlling e5.

### 12 ♘h3

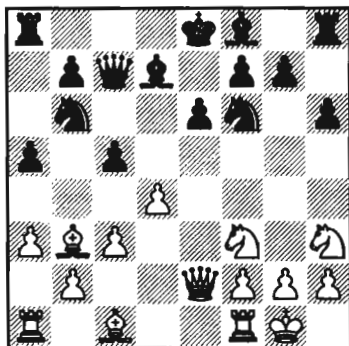
After 12 ♘e5?! cxd4 13 cxd4 Black has a choice:

(a) 13...a4 14 ♖c2 ♖d7 15 ♘xd7 ♘bxd7 – *Game 28* (Kasparov-Karpov, Linares 1994);

(b) 13...♖xa3!? However, Makarychev has dispelled the mirage of this

move, showing that 14 ♖xh6! gives White the better chances after both 14...♖xb2 15 ♜xb2 ♖xh6 16 ♘gf3, and 14...♜xh6 15 ♜xa3 ♜c1+ 16 ♖d1 ♘fd5 17 ♘gf3 f6 18 ♘d3.

12 ... ♖d7  
13 0-0



This position was thoroughly studied in the Short-Gulko match (New York 1994).

### 13 ... cxd4!

In the 3rd game Gulko discovered that 13...♖d6?! was unpromising: 14 dxc5 ♜xc5 (14...♖xc5 15 ♖f4±) 15 ♖e3 ♜c7 16 ♖d4 with strong pressure for White – *Game 29*.

### 14 ♖f4

Or 14 ♘xd4 ♖d6 and now 15 ♘f5?! ♖xh2+ 16 ♖h1 ♖f8 17 g3 exf5 favours Black.

14 ... ♖d6  
15 ♖xd6 ♜xd6  
16 ♜fd1

In the 5th game Short gained the better chances after 16 ♜ad1 0-0 17 ♜xd4 ♜c5 18 ♜fd1 ♖c6?! 19 ♘e5, but in analysis an improvement for

Black was found: 18...♙b5! 19 ♖e5  
♜bd7!

16 ... 0-0  
17 ♜xd4 ♖c5  
18 ♜f4 ♖b5

Also possible is 18...♙b5 19 ♖e1  
(19 ♜xe6? fxe6 20 ♖xe6+ ♘h8 21  
♜e5 ♙e8?) 19...♙c4 20 ♙c2 ♜bd7  
with equal chances (Gulko).

The seventh game of the Short-  
Gulko match now continued 19 ♖xb5  
♙xb5 20 ♜e1 ♜bd7 with equal  
chances.

7.2 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 dxe4  
4 ♜xe4 ♜d7 5 ♙c4 ♜gf6 6 ♜g5  
e6 7 ♖e2 ♜b6 8 ♙b3 h6 9 ♜f3  
a5)

10 a3



White maintains his bishop on the  
a2-g8 diagonal.

10 ... a4

If 10...♙e7 White has the good  
reply 11 ♙d2! ♜bd5 12 c4 ♜c7 13  
♙c2 0-0?! (more circumspect is  
13...b5 14 ♜e5 ♙b7 15 c5 ♜cd5 16

♜gf3±, Bagirov) 14 ♜e5! ♖xd4 15  
♙c3 ♖d8 16 ♜gf3 ♜ce8 17 g4 b5 18  
g5 hxg5 19 ♜xg5 ♜a6 20 ♖f3 with a  
strong attack (Tal-Speelman, Subotica  
IZ 1987).

10...g6 is another idea of Speelman:

(a) 11 c3 ♙g7 12 ♜e5 0-0 13  
♜gf3 c5 14 0-0 a4 15 ♙c2 cxd4 16  
♜d1 ♖e7 17 cxd4 ♜bd5 18 ♙d2 ♜d8  
with an equal game (Gavrikov-  
Speelman, Interzonal Play-off Match,  
London 1985);

(b) 11 ♙d2! (a much sharper reply,  
which according to Pieterse virtually  
refutes 10...g6) 11...♙g7 12 0-0-0  
0-0 13 h4 ♖c7 14 ♜h3 ♜bd5 15 c4±  
(Kupreichik-Tukmakov, 54th USSR  
Ch 1987).

11 ♙a2 c5

After 11...♙e7 12 c3 c5 White  
maintains a slight advantage:

(a) 13 dxc5 ♜bd7 14 ♜d4 ♙xc5 15  
♜gf3 0-0 16 ♙f4 ♙xd4 17 cxd4 ♜d5  
18 ♙d6 ♜e8 19 0-0 (Cabrillo-  
Spiridonov, Varna 1983);

(b) 13 ♙f4 ♙d6 14 ♙g3 ♙xg3 15  
hxg3 cxd4 16 ♜xd4 0-0 17 ♜gf3  
♖c7 18 0-0-0 (Suetin-Ciric, Budva  
1967).

12 ♙f4

Karpov in his prime preferred 12  
c3, when after 12...♜bd5 13 ♜e5! it  
is dangerous to win a pawn by 13...  
cxd4 14 cxd4 ♖a5+ 15 ♙d2 ♖b6 16  
♜gf3 ♖xb2 17 0-0 ♜c3 on account  
of 18 ♖c4! Petrosian replied against  
him 12...♙d7 13 ♜e5 cxd4 14 cxd4  
♙e7 15 ♜gf3 0-0 16 0-0, but could  
not cope with the difficulties – *Game*  
30 (Karpov-Petrosian, Tilburg 1982).

After 12 ♖e3 Smyslov suggested 12...♞bd5, which has become a standard reaction to the bishop's development. Here Black has no problems:

(a) 13 c3 ♖e7 (also possible is the more active 13...♞c7 14 ♞e5 ♖d6 15 ♞gf3 0-0, with a sound position for Black, Karpov-Kavalek, Turin 1982) 14 ♞e5 0-0 15 ♞gf3 ♞c7 16 ♖c4 (or 16 0-0 b5!, and the initiative passes to Black) 16...b6 17 0-0 ♖b7 with equal chances (Liberzon-Smyslov, Biel IZ 1976) – *Game 31*;

(b) 13 ♞e5 ♞a5+ 14 ♖d2 ♞b6 15 ♞c4 ♞a7 with equal chances (I.Gurevich-Epishin, Biel IZ 1993).

12 ... ♞bd5

With 12...♖d6 Black can also count on an equal game:

(a) 13 ♖g3 cxd4 14 0-0-0 ♞c7 15 ♞xd4 ♖xg3 16 hxg3 0-0 17 ♞gf3 ♞a5 18 ♞he1 ♞bd5 19 ♞e5 b6 20 f4 ♞c5 21 ♞f2 h5 with equal chances (Ivanchuk-Karpov, Monaco 1994);

(b) 13 ♖e5 cxd4 14 0-0-0 ♖xe5 16 ♞xe5 ♞xe5 17 ♞xe5 in the endgame the weakness of the a4 pawn is felt) 15 ♞xe5 0-0 16 ♞xd4 ♞bd5 17 c4 ♞c7 with equal chances (Hazai, Lukacs).

13 ♖e5 ♞a5+

14 ♞d2 b5

15 ♞gf3 b4

Black can also consider 15...c4 16 0-0 (16 c3 ♖xa3 17 ♖xc4! ♖xb2 18 ♖xb5+ ♖d7 19 ♞xa4 ♞xc3=) 16...♖b7 17 c3 ♖e7 18 ♖b1 0-0-0 19 ♖c2 ♞a6 with a complicated game (Hazai, Lukacs).

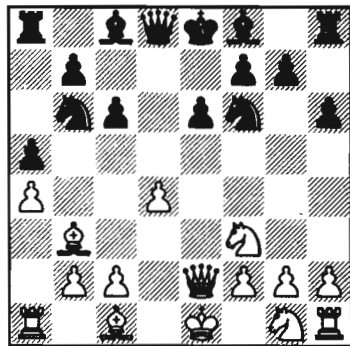
16 ♖c4

Or 16 0-0 ♖a6 17 ♞c4 bxa3 18 bxa3 cxd4! with equal chances.

Ivanchuk-Karpov (Tilburg 1993) now continued 16...♖a6 17 0-0 bxa3 18 ♞xa3 cxd4 19 ♞a1 ♖e7! 20 ♞xd4 0-0 with equal chances.

7.3 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♞c3 dxe4 4 ♞xe4 ♞d7 5 ♖c4 ♞gf6 6 ♞g5 e6 7 ♞e2 ♞b6 8 ♖b3 h6 9 ♞5f3 a5)

10 a4



White nips in the bud Black's threat of ...a5-a4.

10 ... c5

11 ♖f4

The most energetic move, with which White fights for control of e5 – the key square in many similar variations. But it is also useful to be acquainted with his other possibilities:

11 ♖e3 ♞c7 12 ♞e5 ♖d6 (or 12...cxd4 13 ♖xd4 ♖c5 14 ♞gf3 0-0 15 0-0 ♞d8 16 c3 ♖d7 17 ♖xc5 ♞xc5 18 ♞d4, and White, who

intends to strengthen his control of the centre by f2-f4, has the better chances, Ivanchuk-Epishin, Biel IZ 1993) 13 g3 0-0 14 0-0 b5 (it is useful to exchange the important bishop; weaker is 14...d8 15 c3 d7 16 dxc5 xc5 17 xc5 xc5 18 d4 with advantage to White, Ivanchuk-Epishin, Tilburg 1993) 15 c4 xe3 16 fxe3 b6 17 c2 with slightly the better chances for White (Hazai, Lukacs).

11 dxc5 b7 12 e5 xe5 13 xe5 d7 14 e2 xc5 (the alternative is 14...xc5 15 c4 e7 16 f3 0-0 17 0-0 b6) 15 f3 b6! 16 0-0 0-0 17 c3 c7 18 e3 a6 19 c4 xe3 20 xa6 c5 21 d3 and White's position is slightly preferable (Belyavsky-Karpov, Tilburg 1993).

11 ... d6

Or 11...cxd4 12 0-0-0 b5 13 e5 d6 14 xd4 0-0 15 g3 b6 16 b5 a6 17 fd4 and White stands better (Watson-Adams, London 1989).

12 g3!

For the moment White should not be in a hurry to occupy e5:

12 e5 0-0. Here in Tal-Petrosian, (41st USSR Ch 1973) - Game 32, there followed 13 0-0-0?! c4 14 xc4 xa4 15 h3 b6, when Black already stood better, but even after 13 h3 xe5 14 dxe5 fd5 his chances are not worse.

12 e5 0-0 13 g3 c7 14 g3 b5 15 dxc5 xc5 16 0-0 b6 17 fd1 a6 with equal chances (Anand-Karpov, Monaco Blind 1994).

12 ... 0-0

In the event of 12...g3?! 13 hxg3 c7 14 e5 cxd4 15 g3 0-0 16 g4! the opening of the h-file assists White's attack (Mikh.Tseitlin-Spiridonov, Prague 1985).

13 e5

White also retains the initiative with 13 d1 b5 14 e5 - Game 33 (Mikh.Tseitlin-Lutz, Budapest 1989).

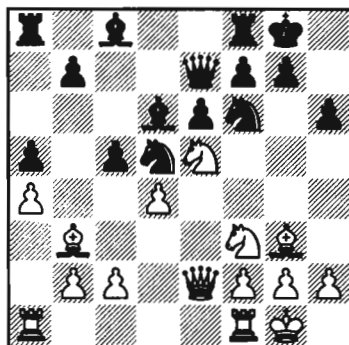
13 ... e7

14 g3

Or 14 0-0-0 cxd4 15 g3 d7 16 xd7 bxd7 17 xd6 xd6 18 xd4 f4+ 19 b1 c5 with equal chances (Karpov).

14 ... b5

15 0-0



15 ... h5?!

This leads to the creation of an isolated pawn. Black should have maintained the tension with 15...b6!?

16 d5!

White played less strongly in Anand-Karpov (Linares 1994) - 16 fe1 c7 17 ad1 g3 18 hxg3



♗f6 19 ♘c4 ♖e7 20 ♜e5 ♝c6, and Black achieved an equal game.

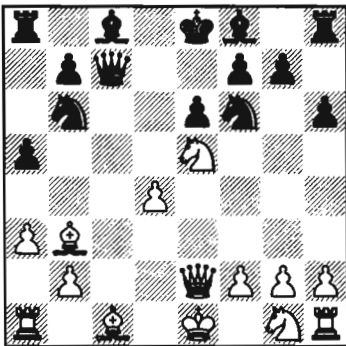
Now after 16...♘xg3 17 hxg3 exd5 18 dxc5 ♖xc5 19 ♜fe1 White's chances are preferable (Karpov).

Game 28  
Kasparov-Karpov  
*Linares 1994*

- |    |       |       |
|----|-------|-------|
| 1  | e4    | c6    |
| 2  | d4    | d5    |
| 3  | ♘d2   | dx e4 |
| 4  | ♘xe4  | ♘d7   |
| 5  | ♖c4   | ♘gf6  |
| 6  | ♘g5   | e6    |
| 7  | ♜e2   | ♘b6   |
| 8  | ♖b3   | h6    |
| 9  | ♘f3   | a5    |
| 10 | c3    | c5    |
| 11 | a3    | ♜c7   |
| 12 | ♘e5?! |       |

A committing move. 12 ♘h3 is simpler.

- |    |      |      |
|----|------|------|
| 12 | ...  | cxd4 |
| 13 | cxd4 |      |



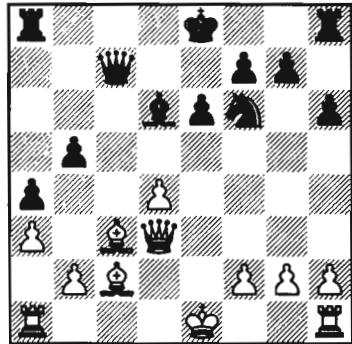
- |    |     |    |
|----|-----|----|
| 13 | ... | a4 |
|----|-----|----|

At the time it was thought that Black had missed a good opportunity here with 13...♖xa3, but, as shown in the analysis, after 14 ♖xh6! White gains the better chances.

- |    |      |       |
|----|------|-------|
| 14 | ♖c2  | ♖d7   |
| 15 | ♘xd7 | ♘bxd7 |
| 16 | ♜d1  |       |

As a result of his poorly played opening, White has been saddled with an isolated d-pawn, and Black can freely use the d5 square as a transit point. For the moment White tries to cover the c-file, which is controlled by Black.

- |    |      |      |
|----|------|------|
| 16 | ...  | ♖d6  |
| 17 | ♘e2  | ♘d5  |
| 18 | ♖d2  | b5   |
| 19 | ♘c3  | ♘xc3 |
| 20 | ♖xc3 | ♘f6  |
| 21 | ♜d3  |      |



- |    |     |      |
|----|-----|------|
| 21 | ... | ♘d5! |
|----|-----|------|

Showing a subtle understanding of the position. After 22 ♜xb5+?! ♜e7 Black is fully mobilised and he threatens 23...♘xc3.

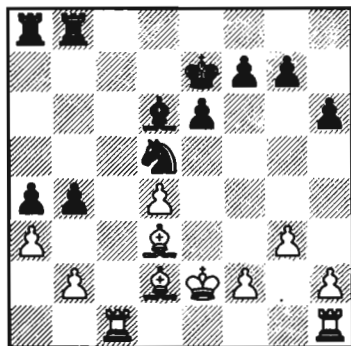
- |    |     |      |
|----|-----|------|
| 22 | ♖d2 | ♜e7! |
|----|-----|------|

Karpov's favourite move in this variation.

23 ♖c1 ♖c4  
24 ♖e2! ♖hb8?!

Over-hasty. Karpov considers that he should have developed his initiative with 24... ♗f4+! 25 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 26 ♖xc4 bxc4 27 ♖b1 ♖hd8 28 ♖hd1 ♗g5, although after 29 g3 ♗f6 30 ♖e3 White is soundly enough placed.

25 g3 ♖xd3+  
26 ♗xd3 b4



27 ♖a1!

The World Champions are as though competing with each other to see who can play more subtly. With this pawn sacrifice White succeeds in exchanging the targets of Black's attack.

27 ... bxa3  
28 bxa3 ♖b3  
29 ♗c2! ♖xa3  
30 ♖xa3 ♗xa3  
31 ♖a1 ♗b2  
32 ♖xa4 ♖xa4  
33 ♗xa4 ♗xd4

34 f4!

The concluding move of the manoeuvre begun with 27 ♖a1! The advance of the black pawns is blocked at a distance.

34 ... ♖d6  
35 ♖f3 f5  
36 h4! ♗b2  
37 g4! fxg4+  
38 ♖xg4 ♗f6+  
39 ♖f3 ♗d5  
40 ♗c2 ♗f6  
41 h5 ½-½

### Game 29

#### Short-Gulko

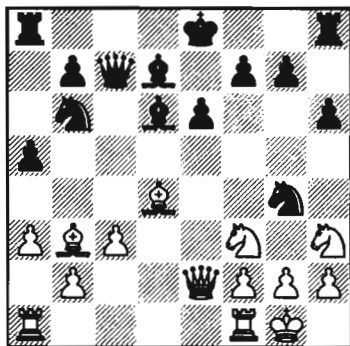
Match (3), New York 1994

1 e4 c6  
2 d4 d5  
3 ♗c3 dxe4  
4 ♗xe4 ♗d7  
5 ♗c4 ♗gf6  
6 ♗g5 e6  
7 ♖e2 ♗b6  
8 ♗b3 h6  
9 ♗f3 a5  
10 c3 c5  
11 a3 ♖c7  
12 ♗h3 ♗d7  
13 0-0 ♗d6?!

In the 7th game of the match Gulko played the stronger 13...cxd4!

14 dxc5 ♖xc5  
15 ♗e3 ♖c7  
16 ♗d4 ♗g4?!

An unsuccessful sortie. Had Black anticipated his opponent's reply, he would have preferred 16...0-0!? 17 ♗e5±.



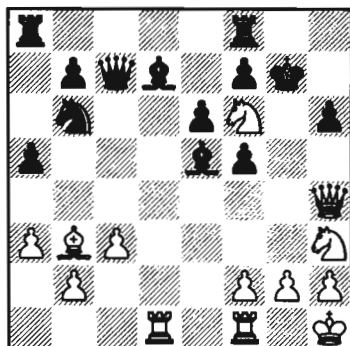
17 ♘d2! ♗f6

An admission of his mistake. After 17...♗xh2 the knight will be unable to return.

18 ♖h1 0-0?

To castle into such an obvious attack is suicidal. 18...♗c6 19 f4 0-0-0 was correct.

19 ♗xf6 gxf6  
 20 ♖g4+ ♖h7  
 21 ♘e4 f5  
 22 ♘f6+ ♖h8  
 23 ♖h4 ♗g7  
 24 ♖ad1 ♗e5



25 ♘h5+ ♖h7  
 26 f4 ♗h8  
 27 ♘g5+ 1-0

The knight is taboo (27...hxg5 28 ♘f6+ ♗g7 29 ♖xg5 mate), while if the king moves, the rook joins the attack: 27...♗g8 28 ♘f6+ ♗xf6 (28...♗g7 29 ♘gh7) 29 ♖xh6 ♗xg5 30 ♖xg5+ ♖h8 31 ♖d3 (Short).

Game 30  
 Karpov-Petrosian  
 Tilburg 1982

1 e4 c6  
 2 d4 d5  
 3 ♘d2 dxe4  
 4 ♗xe4 ♘d7

Was it this game that saw the baton of the variation being passed from the ninth World Champion to the twelfth?

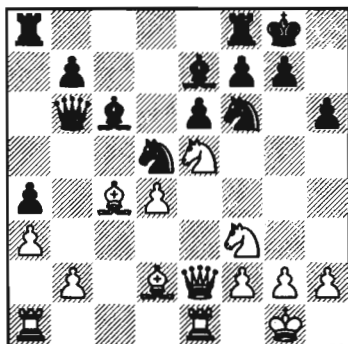
5 ♗c4 ♘gf6  
 6 ♘g5 e6  
 7 ♖e2 ♗b6  
 8 ♖b3 a5  
 9 a3 a4  
 10 ♗a2 h6  
 11 ♘5f3 c5  
 12 c3 ♗d7

12...♗bd5 can be answered by 13 ♗e5!, when it is dangerous to win a pawn by 13...cxd4 14 cxd4 ♖a5+ 15 ♗d2 ♖b6 16 ♘gf3 ♖xb2 17 0-0 ♘c3 on account of 18 ♖c4! (Karpov).

13 ♗e5 cxd4  
 14 cxd4 ♗e7  
 15 ♘gf3 0-0  
 16 0-0 ♗e8  
 17 ♗d2 ♗bd5  
 18 ♖fc1

Black was intending ...b7-b5, and after 18 ♖c4 ♜b8 White would be obliged to exchange the light-square bishops. But now 18...b5 would weaken the c6 square: 19 ♘c6 ♖xc6 20 ♜xc6 with advantage to White.

18 ... ♜b6  
19 ♖c4 ♖c6  
20 ♜e1

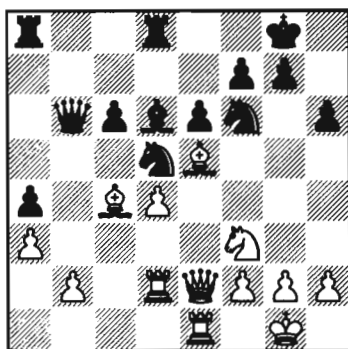


In the play of the great masters much remains off-screen. White's last move is directed against 20...♜fd8, when Karpov was planning the standard sacrifice 21 ♘xf7! ♔xf7 22 ♜xe6+ ♔f8 23 ♖xh6! Now both 23...g6 and 23...♖e8 lose to 24 ♖xd5, and even after the best move 23...♜d6 24 ♜h3 ♖d7 25 ♜h4 White retains dangerous threats.

20 ... ♘c7?!

20...♖d6, taking control of e5, came into consideration.

21 ♘xc6! ♖xc6  
22 ♖f4 ♘cd5  
23 ♖e5 ♜fd8  
24 ♜ad1 ♖d6  
25 ♜d2



25 ... ♖xe5?!

Although Black's position is cramped, why aggravate the situation? An eventual ...c6-c5 would have eased his defence.

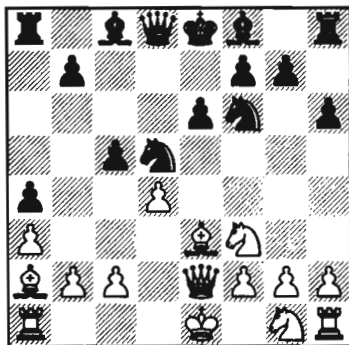
26 ♖xe5 ♘d7  
27 g3! ♘f8  
28 ♜ed1 ♜d7  
29 ♜e4 ♜b7  
30 ♜c2 ♜ab8  
31 ♜dd2 ♘e7  
32 ♔g2 ♜a5  
33 h4 ♜d7  
34 ♖e2 ♜d5  
35 ♜d4 ♜xd4  
36 ♜xd4 ♘d5?

With this move Black blunders away a pawn. After 36...♜b7 he could have put up a tough resistance, although White's positional advantage is obvious.

37 ♜xc6 ♜a8  
38 ♜c4 ♜b7  
39 ♜c2 ♘b6  
40 ♖b5 ♘g6  
41 ♜d6 ♜a8  
42 ♖c6 1-0

Game 31  
Liberzon-Smyslov  
*Biel Interzonal 1976*

- |        |       |
|--------|-------|
| 1 e4   | c6    |
| 2 d4   | d5    |
| 3 ♘c3  | dxe4  |
| 4 ♘xe4 | ♘d7   |
| 5 ♖c4  | ♗gf6  |
| 6 ♗g5  | e6    |
| 7 ♗e2  | ♘b6   |
| 8 ♖b3  | h6    |
| 9 ♘5f3 | a5    |
| 10 a3  | a4    |
| 11 ♖a2 | c5    |
| 12 ♖e3 | ♘bd5! |



Black has equalised.

- 13 c3 ♖e7

Black can also play the more active 13...♗c7 14 ♘e5 ♖d6 15 ♘gf3 0-0, with a sound position (Karpov-Kavalek, Turin 1982).

- 14 ♘e5 0-0  
15 ♘gf3 ♗c7  
16 ♖c4

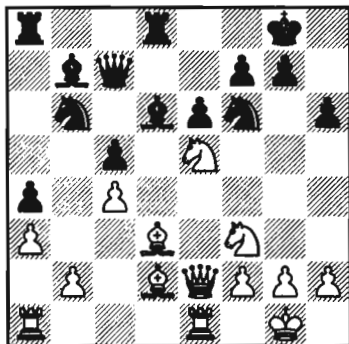
After 16 0-0 b5! (17 ♗xb5? ♖a6) Black threatens to advance ...b5-b4.

- 16 ... b6  
17 0-0 ♖b7  
18 ♖d2 ♖d6  
19 dxc5

After 19 ♗fe1 cxd4 White is left with an isolated pawn, but the surrender of the pawn centre also gives Black active piece play.

- 19 ... bxc5  
20 ♖d3 ♗fd8  
21 ♗fe1 ♘b6  
22 c4?

In defending against 22...c4, White loses a pawn. He should have reconciled himself to 22 ♗ad1 c4 23 ♖b1 ♖d5, when Black's position is only slightly more pleasant.

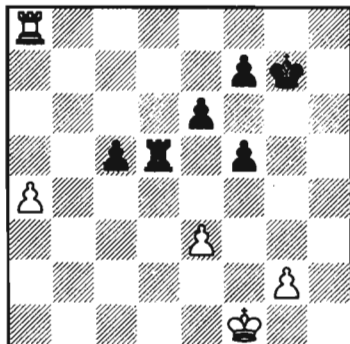


- 22 ... ♖xf3!  
23 ♘xf3 ♖xh2+  
24 ♘xh2 ♗d6  
25 ♘g4 ♗xd3  
26 ♘xf6+ gxf6  
27 ♖xh6 ♗xe2  
28 ♗xe2 ♘xc3  
29 ♗c1 ♘e5

After this lively skirmish Black succeeds in retaining his extra pawn,

since if 30 ♖xc5? there follows 30...♗d1+ 31 ♔h2 ♘g4+.

- |    |      |       |
|----|------|-------|
| 30 | ♖e3  | ♘d3   |
| 31 | ♖c4  | ♗d5   |
| 32 | ♖ec2 | ♖a5   |
| 33 | ♖d2  | ♖a8   |
| 34 | ♖e3  | ♖b8   |
| 35 | ♖xa4 | ♖xb2  |
| 36 | ♖xb2 | ♘xb2  |
| 37 | ♖a8+ | ♔g7   |
| 38 | a4   | ♘c4   |
| 39 | ♔f1  | ♘xe3+ |
| 40 | fxe3 | f5    |



Things have reduced to a rook ending where White's outside passed pawn, together with the compact grouping of the black pawns within his king's sphere of influence, give him good drawing chances.

- |    |      |      |
|----|------|------|
| 41 | ♔e2  | ♔f6  |
| 42 | ♖a7  | ♖e5  |
| 43 | ♔f3  | ♖e4  |
| 44 | ♖c7  | ♖xa4 |
| 45 | ♖xc5 | e5   |
| 46 | g3!  |      |

Restricting the mobility of the black pawns. After the careless 46

♖c2 f4 47 exf4 ♖xf4+ it is much more difficult to defend.

- |    |      |      |
|----|------|------|
| 46 | ...  | ♖a2  |
| 47 | g4   | e4+  |
| 48 | ♔g3  | fxg4 |
| 49 | ♔xg4 | ♖f2  |
| 50 | ♖c6+ | ♔e5  |
| 51 | ♖c5+ | ♔e6  |

If 51...♔d6 there follows 52 ♖f5.

- |    |      |      |
|----|------|------|
| 52 | ♖c6+ | ♔d5  |
| 53 | ♖c8  | ♖f3  |
| 54 | ♗d8+ | ♔c5  |
| 55 | ♖c8+ | ♔b5  |
| 56 | ♖c7  | f6   |
| 57 | ♖c8  | ♖xe3 |
| 58 | ♔f4  | ♖e1  |
| 59 | ♖c7  | e3   |
| 60 | ♔f3  | f5   |
| 61 | ♖c8  | ½-½  |

**Game 32**  
**Tal-Petrosian**  
*41st USSR Ch 1973*

- |   |      |      |
|---|------|------|
| 1 | e4   | c6   |
| 2 | d4   | d5   |
| 3 | ♘c3  | dxе4 |
| 4 | ♘xe4 | ♘d7  |
| 5 | ♖c4  | ♘gf6 |
| 6 | ♘g5  | e6   |
| 7 | ♗e2  | ♘b6  |
| 8 | ♖b3  | a5   |
| 9 | a4   |      |

Tal radically halts the advance of the black a-pawn.

- |    |      |     |
|----|------|-----|
| 9  | ...  | h6  |
| 10 | ♘5f3 | c5  |
| 11 | ♖f4  | ♖d6 |
| 12 | ♖e5  |     |

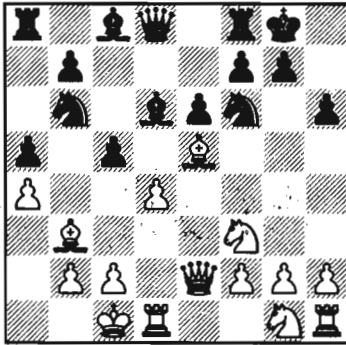
At the present time, not without the

influence of this game, 12 ♖g3! is considered strongest.

12 ... 0-0

13 0-0-0?!

A risky decision, since the king is less secure here. 13 ♘h3 is sounder, although after 13...♖xe5 14 dxe5 ♘fd5 Black's chances are not worse.



13 ... c4!

By this exchange of pawns Black seizes the initiative and quickly approaches the white king.

14 ♖xc4 ♘xa4

15 ♘h3 ♘b6

16 g4 a4

17 g5 hxg5

18 ♘hxg5

18 ♘fxg5 came into consideration, allowing the queen to go to h5, which, in view of the threat of exchanging the knight at f6, would have tied its black opponent to the defence of the kingside (by ...♗f6-h6). However, in this case too Black could have attacked as in the game.

18 ... a3!

19 b3 ♖b4

20 ♖hg1

20 ♗d3 is met by the same reply as in the game.

20 ... a2

The tempting 20...♖c3 (with the threat of 21...a2) could have been answered by 21 ♖xf6 ♗xf6 22 ♗d3.

21 ♖b2 ♘xc4+

22 ♗xc4 ♘d5

23 ♘e4 f6

24 ♖f4?

In a difficult position White overlooks an intermediate check, but even after 24 ♖g3 f5 25 ♖e5 ♖f7 the threat of ...♖c3+ cannot be parried without losing the knight.

24 ... ♖a3+

25 ♖a1 ♘xf4

26 h4 ♖f7

27 ♖g4 ♗a5

Now if 28 ♖xf4 there follows 28...♖b2+. White resigns (0-1).

### Game 33

Mikh. Tseitlin-Lutz

Budapest 1989

1 e4 c6

2 d4 d5

3 ♘c3 dxe4

4 ♘xe4 ♘d7

5 ♖c4 ♘gf6

6 ♘g5 e6

7 ♗e2 ♘b6

8 ♖b3 h6

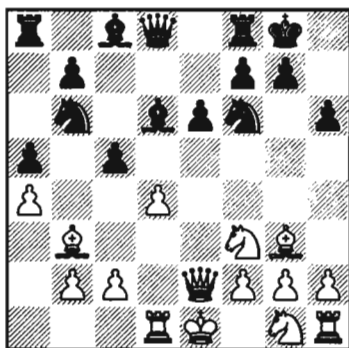
9 ♘f3 a5

10 a4 c5

11 ♖f4 ♖d6

12 ♖g3! 0-0

13 ♖d1



13 ♘e5 is also good.

13 ... ♘bd5

14 ♘e5 cxd4

15 ♘gf3 ♙b4+

16 ♚f1 ♘d7

16...♙d7!? can also be considered.

17 ♘xd4 ♘xe5

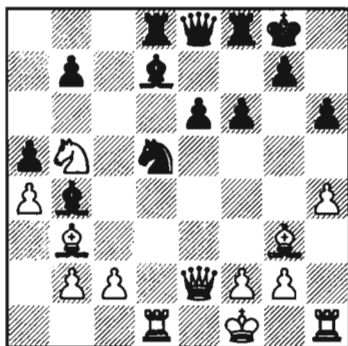
18 ♙xe5 ♙d7

19 h4! ♚e8

20 ♘b5 f6

21 ♙g3! ♚d8?

Black fails to take account of the changed situation – the weakening of the a2-g8 diagonal. He should have preferred 21...♞c8 22 h5±.



22 ♘c7! ♚e7

22...♘xc7 23 ♙xc7 ♞c8 24 ♞xd7!  
is also bad.

23 ♘xd5 exd5

24 ♚xe7 ♙xe7

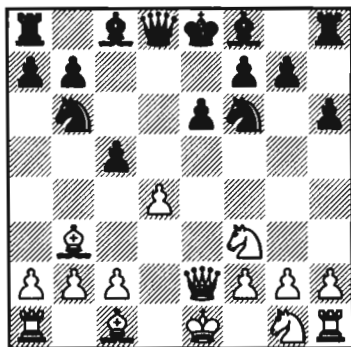
25 ♞xd5 ♚h7

26 ♙c7 1-0



## 8: 9...c5

1	e4	c6
2	d4	d5
3	♘c3	dxе4
4	♗xe4	♗d7
5	♙c4	♗gf6
6	♗g5	e6
7	♚e2	♗b6
8	♙b3	h6
9	♗5f3	c5



This logical continuation is the most consistent.

### 10 ♙f4

An energetic move: the white pieces aim for control of the important e5 square. But other logical continuations by White must also be considered:

**10 dxc5** ♗bd7 (this is considered best, but also possible is 10...♙xc5 11 ♗e5 0-0 12 ♗gf3 ♗bd7 13 ♙f4 ♗xe5 14 ♗xe5 ♗d5 15 ♙d2 a5 16 c4 a4 with an equal game, Duckstein-Pachman, Bad Wörisofen 1992) 11

♗e5 (11 c6 is insufficient to retain the initiative: 11...bxc6 12 ♗h3 ♙e7 13 0-0 ♚b6 14 ♗f4 ♙a6 15 c4 c5 16 ♗d3 0-0=, Suetin-Petrosian, Moscow 1959) 11...♗xe5 12 ♚xe5 ♚a5+ 13 ♙d2 ♚xc5 14 ♚e2 ♙e7 15 ♗f3 0-0 16 ♗e5 b6 17 f4 ♙b7 18 0-0-0 ♚ad8 19 ♚he1 ♗e4 20 ♙e3 ♚c7 with a complicated game (Van der Wiel-Mittelman, Leeuwarden 1995).

**10 c3** ♚c7 (releasing the pawn tension by 10...cxd4 allows White to occupy the central squares: 11 ♗xd4 ♙e7 12 ♗gf3 0-0 13 0-0 ♙d7 14 ♗e5 ♙a4 15 ♙f4 ♚c8? 16 ♗g6! ♚e8 17 ♗xe7+ ♚xe7 18 ♗f5, and to gain an advantage, Short-Adams, London 1989) 11 ♗h3 ♙d6 12 dxc5 ♙xc5 13 ♙f4 ♙d6 (13...♚e7 14 ♗e5!?) 14 ♙xd6 ♚xd6 15 ♚d1 ♚c7 16 0-0 0-0 17 ♚d4 with some initiative for White (Adams-Vyzhmanavin, Burgas 1993).

**10 ♙e3** ♚c7 11 ♗e5 ♙d6 12 ♗gf3 0-0 13 g4! (or 13 0-0 a5 14 c4 ♗bd7 15 ♗xd7 ♙xd7=, Stein-Smyslov, USSR 1964) 13...c4 14 ♗xc4 ♗xc4 15 ♙xc4 ♗xg4 16 ♚g1 ♗xe3 17 fxe3 b5 18 ♙d3 ♙b7 19 0-0-0 f5 20 ♚b1 ♙d5 with a complicated game (D.Frolov-Krogus, St Petersburg 1994).

### 10 ... ♗bd5

In order to maintain the balance, energetic counterplay is required of Black. With a white rook about to appear on the d-file, the attempt to exchange the dark-square bishops by

**10...d6** involves a certain loss of time: 11 g3! e7 (or 11...xg3 12 hxg3 e7 13 0-0-0 d7 14 e5 cxd4 15 h4 0-0-0 16 hxd4 with the better chances for White, Makropoulou-Dahl, Manila OL 1992) 12 dxc5 xc5 13 e5 d7 14 gxf3 h5 15 0-0-0 with the better chances for White (Kasparov-Karpov, Linares 1992) – *Game 34*.

The recent continuation **10...a6** (with the idea of sacrificing a pawn: 11 0-0-0 c4! 12 xc4 xc4 13 xxc4 d5 14 d2 b5 15 e2 b7 16 e5, and here in Kurpeichik-Spiridonov, Palma de Mallorca 1989, by playing 16...c8, with the idea of ...e7, ...0-0 and...b5-b4, Black would have gained a dangerous attack) has been compromised by the energetic reply 11 c4! d6 (or 11...cxd4 12 0-0-0 c5 13 xd4 with the initiative for White, Watson-Spiridonov, Palma de Mallorca 1989 – *Game 35*) 12 e5 cxd4 13 0-0-0 xe5 14 xe5 db7 15 gxf3 c7 16 xd4 xe5 17 xe5 with unpleasant pressure in the centre for White (Cs.Horvath-Kelecevic, Budapest 1992).

**11 e5**

Passive is **11 g3 a5** + 12 d2 cxd4 13 gxf3 c5 14 0-0 0-0 with an equal game (Belotti-Kallai, France 1993).

**11 ... a5+**

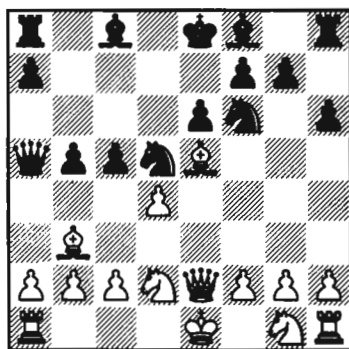
**12 d2**

After the exchange of queens **12 d2 xd2** + 13 xd2 cxd4 14 gxf3 c5 15 0-0-0 0-0 the game is equal

(Yang Xian-Adianto, Djakarta IZ 1993).

**12 ... b5**

The voluntary conceding of the centre leaves White with the initiative: **12...cxd4** 13 gxf3 (after 13 xd4 c5 14 e5 d7 15 h3 0-0-0 16 0-0 c6 17 a4 d7 the game is equal, Ehlvest-Vyzhmanavin, Novosibirsk 1993) 13...e7 14 xd4 0-0 15 0-0-0! (after 15 0-0 d7 16 c4 b4 17 d4f3 c6 18 c3 wf5 19 a3 ffd8 20 ffd1 e8 21 f1 e4 22 e1 g5 the game is equal, Anand-Karpov, Monaco 1993) 15...d7 16 b1 b6 17 c4 b4 18 e4 xe4 19 xe4 c5?! 20 c2 c6 21 g4 with a dangerous attack for White (Anand-Khalifman, Biel IZ 1993). Stronger is 19...ffd8!± (Khalifman).



**13 dxc5**

**13 c4** is also interesting: 13...db6 (or 13...bxc4 14 xc4 db6 15 b4 xb4 16 b1 a5 with equal chances, Short-Speelman, Hastings 1988/9 – *Game 36*) 14 cxb5 c4 15 xc4 b7 16 gxf3?! (16 f1!)

16...♖xc4 17 ♗xc4 ♜c8 18 ♗d3 ♙e4  
19 ♗e2 ♙xf3 20 ♗xf3 ♘d5, and  
Black has the initiative for the pawn  
(Anand-Ivanchuk, Moscow Grand  
Prix 1994).

13 ... ♙xc5  
14 c3

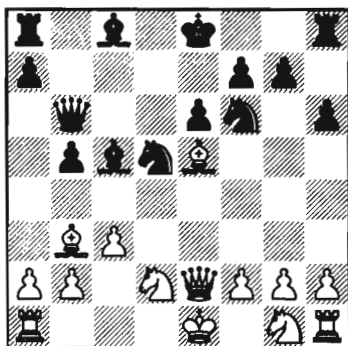
The pawn exchange in the centre  
has allowed Black to develop his  
pieces in active positions. He is ready  
to develop counterplay and therefore  
White aims to exploit the slight  
weakening of his opponent's queen-  
side.

The plan with queenside castling is  
risky: 14 0-0-0 ♙b7 15 ♘e4 ♙e7  
(15...♘xe4!? is even more energetic:  
16 ♗xe4 0-0-0, and 17 ♘f3?! is bad  
because of 17...♘e3! 18 ♜xd8+ ♜xd8  
19 ♗f4 ♘f5! ♞, Blatny) 16 ♘d6+  
♙xd6 17 ♙xd6 ♜d8! 18 ♙e5 (or 18  
♗e5 ♗b6 19 ♙xd5 ♜xd6 20 ♙xb7  
♜xd1+ 21 ♙xd1 ♗xb7 ♞, Karpov)  
18...0-0 19 ♘f3 ♘d7! and Black's  
chances are preferable (Shabalov-  
Karpov, Tilburg 1994).

In J.Polgar-Leko (Vienna 1996)  
White immediately counter-attacked  
with 14 a4 and after mass exchanges  
- 14...♙b7 15 ♗xb5+ ♗xb5 16 axb5  
♙xf2+ 17 ♙xf2 ♘g4+ 18 ♗e2 ♘xe5  
19 ♙xd5 ♙xd5 20 ♘gf3 gained the  
better ending thanks to her queenside  
pawn majority. 14...♙d7 would have  
been more circumspect.

14 ... ♗b6

Also possible is 14...♙b7 15 ♘gf3  
♗b6 16 0-0 0-0 17 ♜ad1 ♜ad8 with  
an equal game (Eichorn-Morgado,  
corr. 1994).



15 a4!

15 ♙xd5, attempting to give Black  
an isolated pawn, can be met by  
15...♘d5!, not fearing the compli-  
cations after 16 ♙xg7 ♜g8 17 ♙xh6  
♜xg2 18 ♘e4 ♙b7 19 ♘f3 ♙e3 20  
♙xe3 ♘xe3 21 ♘f6+ ♗e7 etc., while  
the two bishops give Black good a  
good game in the event of 16 b4 ♙f8  
17 a4 bxa4 18 ♜xa4 ♙b7.

Ivanchuk-Gulko (Riga 1995) now  
continued 15...bxa4 16 ♙xa4+ ♙d7  
17 ♘c4 ♗d8 18 ♘f3 0-0 19 0-0 ♗c8  
20 ♘d6! ♙xd6 21 ♙xd6 ♜d8 22 ♙e5  
a5 23 ♙c2 ♙c6 24 ♘d4 ♙b7 with  
equal chances.

### Game 34

Kasparov-Karpov

Linares 1992

- |   |      |      |
|---|------|------|
| 1 | e4   | c6   |
| 2 | d4   | d5   |
| 3 | ♘d2  | dxe4 |
| 4 | ♘xe4 | ♘d7  |
| 5 | ♘g5  | ♘gf6 |
| 6 | ♙c4  | e6   |

7 ♖e2 ♘b6

8 ♙b3 h6

9 ♘f3 c5

10 ♙f4 ♙d6

10...♘bd5 is the main continuation.

11 ♙g3! ♖e7

12 dxc5 ♙xc5

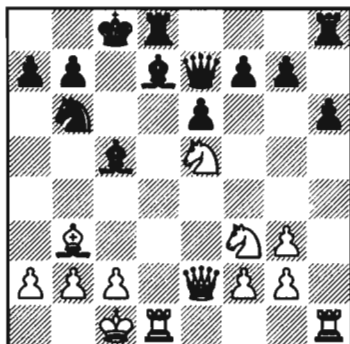
13 ♘e5 ♙d7

14 ♘gf3 ♘h5

15 0-0-0 ♘xg3

If immediately 15...0-0-0, then 16 ♘xd7 ♘xd7 17 ♙e5! ♘xe5 18 ♘xe5 is possible, with strong positional pressure.

16 hxg3 0-0-0



17 ♖h5!

One of Kasparov's creative discoveries. While pressurising the kingside, the rook also joins the attack on the queenside. The threat is 18 ♘xf7 ♖xf7 19 ♖xc5+.

17 ... ♙e8

18 ♖xd8+ ♙xd8

19 ♖d2+ ♙d6

20 ♘d3 ♖c7

21 g4! ♙c8

22 g5 ♙f8?!

Were the rook at h1, Black would have 22...h5. However, this total retreat is an unfortunate decision. 22...♙b8! 23 gxh6 gxh6 24 ♙b1± is stronger.

23 ♖h4!

The threat is stronger than the execution!

23 ... ♙b8

24 a4! ♙e7?!

Stronger was 24...♘c8! 25 ♙b1!±.

25 a5 ♘d5

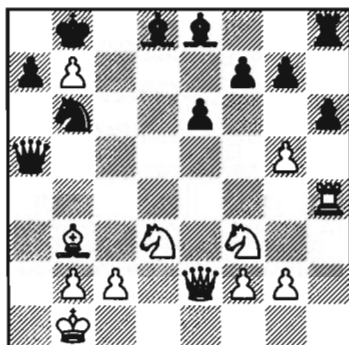
26 ♙b1 ♙d8?!

And here 26...♖g8!? 27 ♖c4 ♖d6 28 ♖d4 hxg5 29 c4 ♙f6 came into consideration (Kasparov).

27 a6 ♖a5

28 ♖e2! ♘b6

29 axb7



Now that Black's queenside has been destroyed, it only remains for White to bring up the reserves – his rook.

29 ... ♙xg5

30 ♘xg5 ♖xg5

31 ♖h5! ♖f6

32 ♖a5 ♙c6

33 ♖c5 ♙xb7  
 34 ♖xb7 ♙xb7  
 35 ♚a6+ ♙c6  
 36 ♙a4+ ♙d6  
 37 ♚d3+ ♖d5  
 38 ♚g3+ ♙e5  
 39 ♚a3+ ♙c7  
 40 ♚c5+ ♙d8  
 41 ♚xa7 1-0

Game 35  
 Watson-Spiridonov  
 Palma de Mallorca 1989

1 e4 c6  
 2 d4 d5  
 3 ♖c3 dxe4  
 4 ♖xe4 ♖d7  
 5 ♙c4 ♖gf6  
 6 ♖g5 e6  
 7 ♚e2 ♖b6  
 8 ♙b3 h6  
 9 ♖5f3 c5  
 10 ♙f4 a6  
 11 c4 cxd4  
 12 0-0-0 ♙c5  
 13 ♖xd4 ♙e7

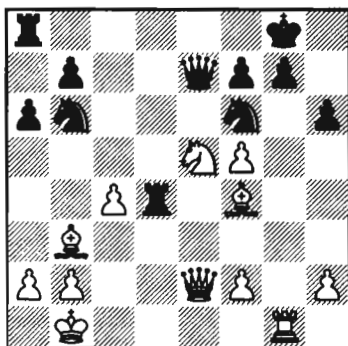
13...♙xd4 is risky: 14 ♖f3 ♙xb2+  
 15 ♚xb2 ♙d7 16 ♖e5 with a  
 dangerous initiative for White.

14 ♖gf3 0-0  
 15 ♚hg1 ♚d8  
 16 ♖b1 ♙d7  
 17 g4 e5!?

A very clever resource, in  
 accordance with classical rules: a  
 flank attack should be met by a  
 counterattack in the centre.

18 ♖xe5 ♙xd4  
 19 ♚xd4 ♙f5+

20 gxf5 ♚xd4



The subsequent play resembles a  
 fencing contest, in which the decisive  
 hit is landed by Watson.

21 ♙xb6 ♚g4!  
 22 ♚xg4 ♖xg4  
 23 ♙xg7! ♖xg7

Or 23...♚g5 24 ♖xg4 ♚xg7 25 h3!  
 ♖d7 26 ♚e7± (Watson).

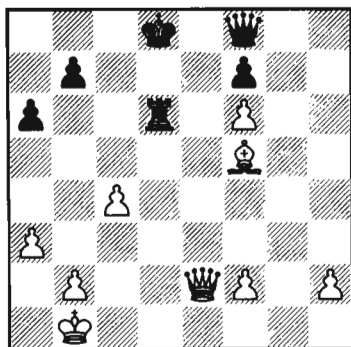
24 ♚xg4+ ♖f8  
 25 ♚f4!

As a result White has three, albeit  
 unconnected, pawns for the exchange,  
 and in addition the black king has not  
 yet found any peace.

25 ... ♖d7  
 26 ♖xd7+ ♚xd7  
 27 a3 ♚d8  
 28 f6 ♚d3+  
 29 ♙c2 ♚d4  
 30 ♚h6+ ♖e8  
 31 ♙f5 ♚c5  
 32 ♚h8+ ♚f8  
 33 ♚h5 ♚d6?

33...♚d6 34 ♚g5± is a tougher  
 defence.

34 ♚e2+ ♖d8



35 ♖e5! ♜d1+  
 36 ♔c2 ♚d6  
 37 ♗e7+ 1-0

Game 36  
 Short-Speelman  
 Hastings 1988/9

1 e4 c6  
 2 d4 d5  
 3 ♟c3 dxе4  
 4 ♟xe4 ♟d7  
 5 ♙c4 ♟gf6  
 6 ♟g5 e6  
 7 ♗e2 ♟b6  
 8 ♙b3 h6  
 9 ♟f3 c5  
 10 ♙f4 ♟bd5  
 11 ♙e5 ♗a5+  
 12 ♟d2

Black's game is easier after the exchange of queens: 12 ♗d2 ♗xd2+ 13 ♟xd2 cxd4 14 ♟gf3 ♙c5.

12 ... b5  
 13 c4

A double-edged move. 13 dxc5 is more natural.

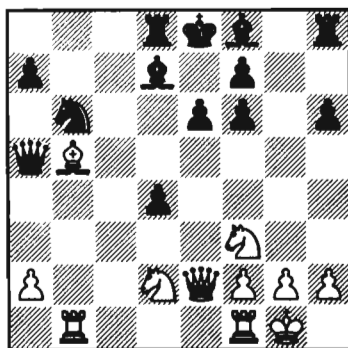
13 ... bxc4

An interesting idea of Ivanchuk is to sacrifice a pawn by 13...♟b6 14 cxb5 c4.

14 ♙xc4 ♟b6  
 15 b4!?

With this pawn sacrifice White tries to seize the initiative.

15 ... ♗xb4  
 16 ♜b1 ♗a5  
 17 ♙b5+ ♙d7  
 18 ♙xf6! gxf6  
 19 ♟gf3 cxd4  
 20 0-0 ♜d8



21 ♟e4! ♙e7  
 22 ♟xd4 ♟f8  
 23 ♜fd1

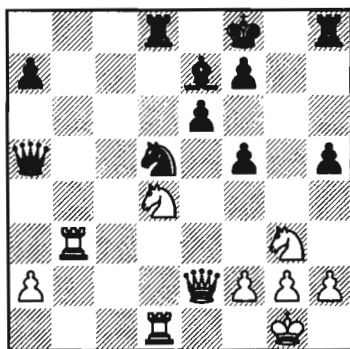
Black's position looks very hazardous, but there are no real threats.

23 ... f5  
 24 ♟g3?

Now the initiative passes to Black. 24 ♙xd7 ♜xd7 25 ♟c6 ♜xd1+ 26 ♜xd1 ♗a4 27 ♟xe7 ♗xe4! 28 ♗b2 e5 29 ♗a3 ♟g7 30 g3 would have led to a double-edged game (Speelman).

24 ... ♔xb5!  
 25 ♖xb5 ♘d5  
 26 ♜b3 h5!?  
 27 ♘d4?!

27 ♘xh5!? should have been ventured.



27 ... ♘f4!

28 ♖f1 ♔xa2  
 29 ♜f3 h4  
 30 ♘gxf5! exf5  
 31 ♜xf4 ♜h6!  
 32 ♜a1?

White could have picked up a pawn by 32 ♜xf5! ♜hd6 33 ♜f4.

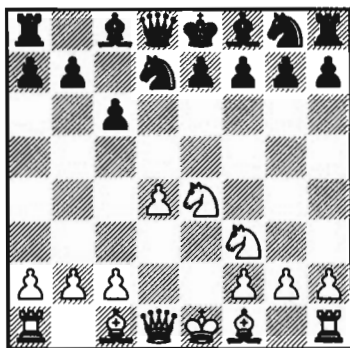
32 ... ♔d2  
 33 ♘e2?

An oversight. As shown by Speelman, the only way to hold the position was 33 ♖c4! ♜hd6 34 ♜xf5 ♜f6 35 ♜xf6 ♔xf6 36 ♘b3, although after 36...♔d5 37 ♖xd5 ♜xd5 the ending is clearly better for Black, who has an outside passed pawn.

33 ... ♜e6  
 34 ♜xf5 ♔xe2  
 35 ♖c1 ♜ed6  
 0-1

## PART III: 5 ♘f3 ♘g6

1	e4	c6
2	d4	d5
3	♗c3	dxe4
4	♗xe4	♗d7
5	♗f3	



The classical continuation, by which White retains the option of exchanging knights at f6 or of retreating to g3. In connection with the latter, it is worth mentioning Romanishin's interesting idea of 5 ♗e2 ♗g6 6 ♗2g3, to which the most natural reply is 6...e6, preparing ...c6-c5. Romanishin-Petrosian (USSR 1979) continued 6...g6 7 ♗c4 ♗g7 8 c3 0-0 9 0-0 ♗d5?! (it was more logical for Black to complete his development by 9...♗b6) 10 ♖e1 e5 11 ♗g5 f6? (and here he should have sacrificed a pawn by 11...♗b6) 12 ♗d2 exd4 13 cxd4 ♗7b6 14 ♗b3 ♗h8 15 ♗c1 a5 16 a3 ♗c7 17 ♗c5!, and White gained the advantage.

The modest 5 c3 ♗g6 has no independent significance, as 6 ♗xf6+ ♗xf6 7 ♗f3 or 6 ♗g3 c5 7 ♗f3 transposes into other lines.

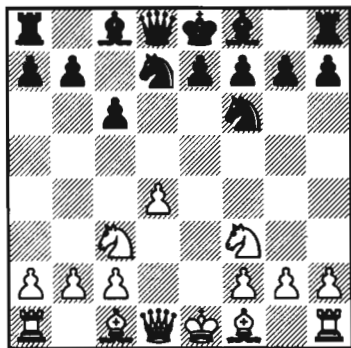
5 ... ♗g6

After 5...♗df6 White can play 6 ♗eg5, transposing into variations examined in Chapter 4 (5 ♗g5 ♗dg6 6 ♗1f3).

Here White's main continuations are 6 ♗xf6+ (Chapter 9) and 6 ♗g3 (Chapters 10 and 11).

After the sortie 6 ♗eg5 and the soundest reply 6...e6 7 ♗d3, play transposes into variations examined in Chapters 1-3.

After the retreat 6 ♗c3:



(a) Black can equalise using Flohr's prescription of 6...♗b6 7 ♗f4 ♗f5, e.g. 8 ♗d3 ♗xd3 9 ♗xd3 e6 10 0-0 ♗e7 11 ♖fe1 0-0 12 ♗g5 h6 13 ♗ge4 ♗bd5= (Antoshin-Flohr, 22nd USSR Ch 1955);



(b) the classical 6...e6 7 ♙d3 (or 7 g3 b6 8 ♙g2 ♙a6 9 ♘e2 ♙e7 10 0-0 0-0=, Spassky-Speelman, London 1982) is also possible:

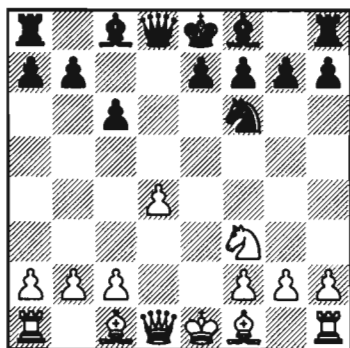
(b1) 7...♙e7 8 0-0 0-0 (premature is 8...c5 9 ♚e2 cxd4 10 ♘xd4 0-0 11 ♙g5 ♘c5 12 ♜ad1 ♘xd3 13 ♜xd3 with the better game for White, Bronstein-Flohr, USSR 1946) 9 ♚e2 b5! 10 ♘e4 ♙b7 11 ♜e1 c5 12 ♘xf6+

♘xf6 13 dxc5 ♙xc5 14 ♙g5 h6 15 ♙h4 g5 16 ♙g3 ♘h5 with equal chances (Bronstein-Razuvaev, Moscow 1978);

(b2) 7...c5 8 ♚e2 cxd4 9 ♘xd4 ♙c5 10 ♘b3 ♙d6? (better 10...♙e7±) 11 ♙g5 a6 12 0-0-0 ♚c7 13 ♚b1 0-0 14 ♘e4 with an attacking position for White (Tal-Shamkovich, 40th USSR Ch 1972).

## 9: 6 ♖xf6+ ♗xf6

- |   |       |      |
|---|-------|------|
| 1 | e4    | c6   |
| 2 | d4    | d5   |
| 3 | ♗c3   | dxe4 |
| 4 | ♗xe4  | ♗d7  |
| 5 | ♗f3   | ♗gf6 |
| 6 | ♗xf6+ | ♗xf6 |



After this unpretentious exchange one may gain the impression that it is now easier for Black to solve his opening problems. But the outward simplicity is deceptive. White retains a solid centre and the advantage of the first move, and has a slight initiative with which Black has to reckon.

Here White's main continuations are 7 ♗e5 (9.1) and 7 ♗c4 (9.2).

Against the modest 7 c3 Petrosian suggested 7...♗g4. His game with Pilnik (Amsterdam CT 1956) continued 8 ♗e2 e6 9 h3 ♗h5 10 ♗e5 ♗xe2 11 ♗xe2 ♗d6 12 ♗g5 ♗c7 13 0-0-0 ♗d7 14 ♗he1 0-0 15 ♗b1 ♗ae8, and Black solved his opening problems.

Nowadays after 7...♗g4 White plays more shrewdly: 8 h3 ♗xf3 (if 8...♗h5 Black has to reckon with 9 g4 ♗g6 10 ♗e5, e.g. 10...♗d7 11 ♗xg6 hxg6 12 d5 cxd5 13 ♗xd5 ♗c7 14 ♗g2 ♗b8 15 ♗e3 and White has two active bishops plus a spatial advantage, Nikolenko-Donchenko, Moscow 1990) 9 ♗xf3 ♗d5 10 ♗e2 e6 11 0-0 ♗xf3 (also possible is 11...♗d6 12 ♗d3 ♗c7 13 ♗f3 ♗d7 14 ♗d1 0-0 15 c4 ♗ad8 16 ♗b3 ♗e7=, Kasparov-Karpov (WC match (14), Seville 1987) 12 ♗xf3 ♗d6 13 ♗d2 0-0 14 ♗ad1 ♗fd8 15 g3 ♗d7 16 ♗c1 ♗ad8 17 ♗g2 ♗e7 18 ♗e2 ♗d5 19 f4 with some initiative for White, although Black's position is solid enough (Nikolenko-Podgaets, Moscow 1992).

9.1 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♗c3 dxe4  
4 ♗xe4 ♗d7 5 ♗f3 ♗gf6 6  
♗xf6+ ♗xf6)

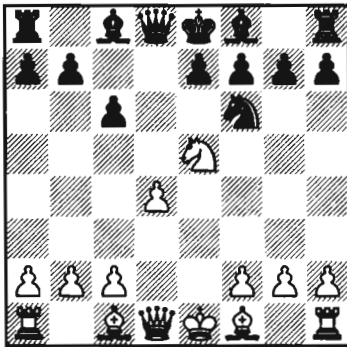
### 7 ♗e5

An aggressive sortie: White immediately occupies the key square of the position. Here Black's main replies are 7...♗d7 (9.11) and 7...♗e6 (9.12).

If he develops with 7...♗f5 8 c3 e6 he has to reckon with the flank attack 9 g4! ♗g6 10 h4 ♗d6 (weaker is 10...h5 11 g5 ♗d5 12 ♗xg6 fxc6 13 ♗c2 ♗f7 14 ♗h3 ♗e7 15 ♗c4 ♗f5 16 ♗f3 ♗d7 17 ♗xf5+! with advan-

tage to White, Karpov-Hort, Bugojno 1978) 11 ♖e2 c5 (or 11...♖a5 12 ♗g2 0-0-0 13 h5±, Malishauskas-Kostenko, Warsaw 1993) 12 ♗g2 cxd4 13 h5 dxc3 14 ♖b5+ ♗f8 15 hxg6 with advantage to White (Circic).

However, 8...♗d7 comes into consideration. Kavalek-Barcza (Caracas 1971) continued 9 ♗xf7 ♗xf7 10 ♖f3 e6 11 g4 ♖f6 12 gxf5 ♖xf5 13 ♖e3 c5 14 ♗h3 cxd4 15 cxd4 ♗b4+ 16 ♗f1 ♖b5+ 17 ♗g1 ♖he8 18 ♖b3 ♖b6 19 ♗e3, although here too White's chances are preferable.



9.11 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♗c3 dxe4 4 ♗xe4 ♗d7 5 ♗f3 ♗g6 6 ♗xf6+ ♗xf6 7 ♗e5)

7 ... ♗d7

Black aims to exchange or drive back the active knight.

8 ♗d3

If 8 ♗f3 Black can invite a repetition of moves by 8...♗f6.

After the exchange of knights he does not experience any difficulties:

8 ♗e3 ♗xe5 9 dxe5 ♗f5 (winning a pawn by 9...♖a5+ 10 ♖d2 ♖xe5 allows White a lead in development after 11 0-0-0) 10 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 11 ♗xa7 ♗xc2 12 ♗b6 ♖a8 13 ♗c4 e6 14 f3 ♖a4! with equal chances (A.Sokolov-Karpov, match (2), Linares 1987);

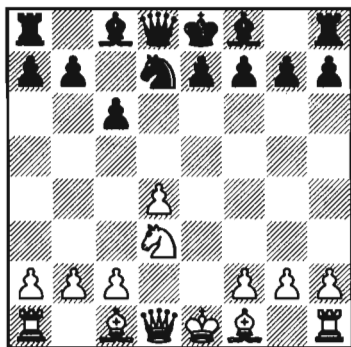
8 ♗f4 ♗xe5 9 ♗xe5, and now:

(a) 9...♖b6?! 10 ♗d3 f6 (taking the b2 pawn would have left Black seriously behind in development) 11 ♗g3 ♗e6 12 ♖e2 ♗f7 13 0-0 e6 14 c3 0-0-0 15 ♗c4 ♖e8 16 b4, and White quickly broke through on the queenside (Larsen-Rogoff, Lone Pine 1978);

(b) 9...♗f5 10 ♗d3 ♗g6 (stronger than 10...♗xd3 11 ♖xd3 e6 12 0-0 ♖d7 13 ♖fe1 ♖d8 14 ♖ad1± (De Wit-Bakker, Holland 1985) 11 0-0 e6 12 ♖e1 ♖b6 13 a4 a5 14 ♖f3 ♗xd3 15 ♖xd3 0-0-0 with equal chances (Fleck-Meduna, Porz 1988);

(c) 9...♖d5 10 c4 (10 ♗e2 f6 11 ♗g3 ♖xg2 12 ♗f3 ♖h3 13 d5 is unclear, Jansa-Radulov, Vrnjacka Banja 1983) 10...♖a5+ 11 ♖d2 ♖xd2+ 12 ♗xd2 ♗f5 13 ♗d3 with a drawish ending (Hübner-Karpov, Wijk aan Zee 1988);

8 ♗xd7 ♗xd7 (or 8...♖xd7 9 c3 ♖g4 with further simplification, Smagin-Chernin, Moscow 1988), and the position is completely equal, as even 9 ♗d3 can be answered by 9...♗f5 10 0-0 (or 10 ♗xf5 ♖a5+) 10...♗xd3 11 ♖xd3 e6 12 ♗f4 ♗d6 with an imminent draw (Matanovic-Radulov, Surakarta 1982).



8 ... g6

Also possible is 8...d7 9 c3 e5 10 e2 (or 10 d5 e6 11 e5 d7 12 d7xg6 hxg6 13 e4 b6 14 e3 d7=, Belyavsky-Lerner, USSR 1980) 10...e6 11 g4 e3 12 d3 e3 13 f4 c7 14 f3 0-0-0 15 b4 h5 16 g5 d5 17 0-0 f6 18 gxf6 gxf6 19 e2 with slightly the better chances for White (Grünfeld-Gallagher, Tel Aviv 1988).

9 e3

Or 9 c3 e7 10 e4 (10 e2 can be met by 10...e5 11 dxe5 dxe5 12 dxe5 dxd1+ 13 e3xd1 e3xe5 with simplification) 10...a5 11 d2 0-0 12 e2 e5 13 dxe5 dxe5 with equal chances (Karpov-Sosonko, Amsterdam 1980).

9 ... e7

10 d2 b6

If 10...e5, then 11 e6! is unpleasant.

11 d5 e6

12 e2

If 12 0-0-0 Black can risk taking the pawn: 12...e3 13 b3 a5 14

e3 b2 a4 15 e1 (15 e2 axb3+ 16 e3xb3 d5) 15...axb3 16 cxb3 e3xb3 17 e3xa8 e3xa8 18 e3xb3 0-0 with sufficient compensation for the sacrificed piece (Timman).

12 ... 0-0

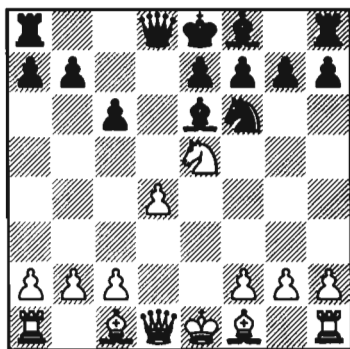
13 0-0-0 f6

The piece sacrifice suggested by Timman also comes into consideration: 13...e3 14 b3 a5 15 e2 a4 16 e1 axb3 17 cxb3 e3xb3 18 e3xb3 d5+ 19 d4, with unclear consequences.

Timman-Korchnoi (Montpellier CT 1985) now continued 14 d3 d4 15 c3 dxe3 16 fxe3 e5 17 d4 e6 18 h1 e4 19 e4 d6 with equal chances.

9.12 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 d3 dxe4 4 dxe4 d7 5 d3 d6 6 dxf6+ dxf6 7 d5)

7 ... e6



Black chooses a plan of piece development.

8 e2 g6

9 0-0  $\Delta$ g7  
10 c4

Passive is 10 c3 0-0 11  $\Delta$ f4  $\Delta$ d7  
12  $\Delta$ f3  $\Delta$ d5 13  $\mathbb{W}$ c2  $\mathbb{M}$ e8 14  $\mathbb{M}$ ad1 e5  
15 dxe5  $\mathbb{W}$ c7 16  $\Delta$ g3  $\Delta$ xe5 17  $\Delta$ d4  
 $\frac{1}{2}$ - $\frac{1}{2}$  (Tal-Agdestein, Wijk aan Zee  
1988).

10 ... 0-0  
11  $\Delta$ e3  $\Delta$ e4

11... $\Delta$ e8 is also played, with the  
same idea: 12  $\Delta$ f4  $\Delta$ d6 13 d5 cxd5  
14 cxd5  $\Delta$ f5! The game is equal  
(Grünfeld-Dlugy, New York 1985).

To 11... $\Delta$ d7 White can also reply  
12 f4 (if 12  $\Delta$ f3  $\Delta$ f6 13 h3  $\Delta$ e4 14  
 $\mathbb{W}$ c1 b5!? 15 cxb5 cxb5 16  $\Delta$ xb5  $\Delta$ d5  
with active piece play for the pawn,  
Belyavsky-Korchnoi, Montpellier CT  
1985) 12... $\Delta$ xe5 13 fxe5  $\mathbb{W}$ c7 14  $\mathbb{W}$ b3  
 $\mathbb{M}$ ad8 15  $\mathbb{M}$ ad1 b5 16  $\mathbb{W}$ c3  $\mathbb{W}$ b8, and  
here in Larsen-Arkell (London 1991)  
he could have retained some advan-  
tage by 17 b3.

12 f4

12  $\mathbb{W}$ c2 can be met by 12... $\Delta$ d6 13  
b3 c5! 14  $\mathbb{M}$ ad1  $\Delta$ f5 15 d5  $\Delta$ xe5 16  
dxe6  $\mathbb{W}$ c7 17 exf7+  $\mathbb{M}$ xf7 18 g3  $\mathbb{M}$ af8  
19  $\Delta$ g4!  $\Delta$ xe3 20 fxe3  $\mathbb{M}$ xf1+  $\frac{1}{2}$ - $\frac{1}{2}$   
(A.Sokolov-Karpov, match (3), Lin-  
ares 1987).

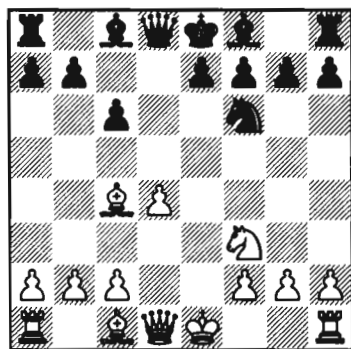
12 ... f6

Or 12... $\Delta$ d6 13 b3  $\mathbb{W}$ a5 14  $\mathbb{W}$ c2  
 $\mathbb{M}$ fd8 15  $\mathbb{M}$ ad1 with somewhat the  
better chances for White (Ivanovic-  
Watson, Bor 1986) – *Game 37*.

Psakhis-Tukmakov (54th USSR Ch  
1987) now continued 13  $\Delta$ f3  $\Delta$ f7 14  
 $\mathbb{W}$ c2  $\Delta$ d6 15  $\Delta$ d3 b5 16 b3 bxc4 17  
bxc4, and White's spatial advantage  
gave him the better chances.

9.2 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3  $\Delta$ c3 dxe4  
4  $\Delta$ xe4  $\Delta$ d7 5  $\Delta$ f3  $\Delta$ gf6 6  
 $\Delta$ xf6+  $\Delta$ xf6)

7  $\Delta$ c4



White calmly continues his  
development.

7 ...  $\Delta$ f5

8 0-0

Here too 8  $\Delta$ e5 e6 9  $\Delta$ b3  $\Delta$ d6 10  
 $\mathbb{W}$ e2  $\mathbb{W}$ c7 is possible, with a double-  
edged game. One of Petrosian's first  
attempts went 10... $\Delta$ d7 11  $\Delta$ d2 a5?  
(11... $\Delta$ xe5 12 dxe5  $\mathbb{W}$ c7 is correct) 12  
 $\Delta$ xf7!  $\Delta$ xf7 13 g4 with a very strong  
attack for White (Gligoric-Petrosian,  
USSR v. Yugoslavia 1957) – *Game 38*.

The plan with queenside castling is  
also encountered: 8  $\mathbb{W}$ e2 e6 9  $\Delta$ g5  
 $\Delta$ e7 (the energetic 9... $\mathbb{W}$ a5+ is also  
interesting: 10 c3  $\Delta$ e4 11 0-0  $\Delta$ xg5  
12  $\Delta$ xg5  $\Delta$ e7, and here in Xie Jun-  
Adams, Amsterdam 1994, White  
could have sacrificed a knight – 13  
 $\Delta$ xf7!?  $\Delta$ xf7 14 g4  $\Delta$ g6 15 f4!  $\Delta$ e8  
16 f5  $\Delta$ f7 17  $\mathbb{M}$ ae1 with a dangerous  
initiative, Adams) 10 0-0-0  $\Delta$ g4!

(Black can also consider 10...b5!? 11 ♟d3 ♟xd3 12 ♞xd3 0-0 13 ♞e5 ♞d5 14 ♞g3 ♞fd8 15 ♟b1 ♞ac8 16 ♞d1 c5 with an equal game, Loffler-Lee, Biel 1991), and now:

(a) 11 h3 ♟xf3 12 ♞xf3 ♞d5 13 ♟xe7 ♞xe7 14 ♞he1 (or 14 ♟b1 ♞d8 15 ♞e4 b5 16 ♟d3 a5 17 c3 ♞d6 18 g3 b4 19 c4 ♞f6 and Black maintains the balance, Fischer-Petrosian, Bled 1961) 14...0-0 15 ♟b1 ♞ad8 with equal chances (Matanovic-Petrosian, USSR v. Yugoslavia 1959) – *Game 1*.

(b) 11 ♟b1 0-0 (if 11...♞d5 Fischer recommended 12 ♟c1!±, but 11...b5!? 12 ♟b3 0-0 or 12 ♟d3 ♞d5 comes into consideration) 12 h3 ♟xf3 13 ♞xf3 ♞d5!? (driving back the bishop; after 13...b5 14 ♟d3 ♞d5 15 ♞e3 ♞ac8 16 g4 ♞fd8 17 f4 ♟f8 18 f5 White develops a strong attack, Tiviakov-Adams, match (3), New York 1994) 14 ♟c1 ♟g5 15 ♟e3 with slightly the better chances for White (Tiviakov).

8 ... e6

9 ♞e5

Initially 9 ♞e1 was played, but in this case Black can prevent the advance of the knight: 9...♟g4 10 c3 ♟d6 (or 10...♟e7 11 h3 ♟xf3 12 ♞xf3 0-0 13 g3 b5 14 ♟f1 ♞d5 15 h4! ♟f6 16 ♟d3±, Ehlvest-Kharitonov, 55th USSR Ch 1988) 11 ♟e2 ♞c7, and now if 12 ♞e5 Podgaets recommends 12...♟xe5!? 13 dxе5 ♞d8 14 ♞a4 ♞xe5 15 ♟f4 ♞f5 16 ♟c7 ♞d7 17 ♞xa7 0-0 18 ♟xg4 ♞xg4 19 f3 ♞f2!? with chances for both sides.

In Short-Gulko (match (1), New York 1994) White played 9 h3 ♟e7 10 c3 0-0 11 ♞e2 c5 (11...b5!? 12 ♟b3 ♟e4 came into consideration) 12 ♟f4! ♟e4 13 ♞ad1, and here with 13...♞b6!? Black could have gained a good game.

9 ... ♟d6

After the more passive 9...♟e7 10 c3 ♞d7 11 ♟f4 0-0 12 ♞e2 ♞b6 13 ♟b3 a5 14 a3 ♞d5 15 ♟g3 ♞e8 16 ♞ad1 White's position is slightly preferable (Rozenalis-Epishin, Vilnius 1988).

10 ♞e2

Or 10 c3 ♞c7 11 ♞e2 0-0-0 12 ♞e1 ♟b8 13 ♟f4 ♞d5 14 ♟g3 h5 with chances for both sides (Akopian-Adams, Manila OL 1992).

10 ... ♞c7

11 h3

Preparing in the event of 11...0-0 the pawn attack 12 g4 ♟g6 13 f4.

11 ... h6

12 ♞e1

12 g4 ♟h7 13 ♞xf7 ♟xf7 14 ♟xe6+ ♟f8 is dubious for White.

12 ... 0-0-0

13 ♟b3 ♞d5

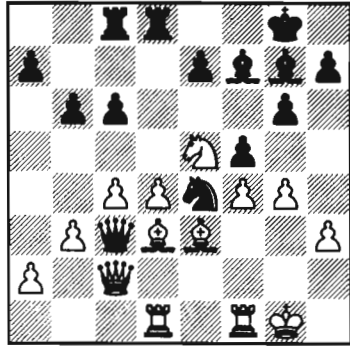
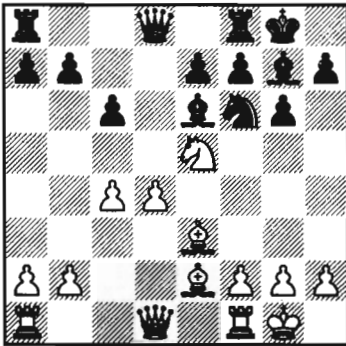
14 ♟d2

White's chances are preferable (Yakovich-Hoogendoorn, Amsterdam 1995) – *Game 39*.

Game 37  
Ivanovic-Watson  
Bor 1986

1 e4 c6  
2 d4 d5

3 ♖c3 dxe4  
 4 ♖xe4 ♖d7  
 5 ♖f3 ♖gf6  
 6 ♖xf6+ ♖xf6  
 7 ♖e5 ♖e6  
 8 ♖e2 g6  
 9 0-0 ♖g7  
 10 c4 0-0  
 11 ♖e3



22 ... ♖xc2?!

White has a spatial advantage, and going into an endgame merely aggravates Black's problems. His pieces are well enough placed for play in the middlegame, and it would have been better to attack the centre: 22...c5! 23 gxf5 cxd4 with adequate counterplay.

11 ... ♖e8  
 11...♖e4 is more active, although after 12 f4 ♖d6 the same position is reached.

12 f4 ♖d6  
 13 b3 ♖a5  
 14 ♖c2 ♖fd8  
 15 ♖ad1 ♖ac8  
 16 g4 f6  
 17 ♖d3 f5

After 17...♖f7 White has the opportunity to strengthen his position by 18 ♖f3.

18 ♖c5 ♖f7  
 19 h3 b6  
 20 ♖d3 ♖e4  
 21 ♖e5 ♖c3  
 22 ♖d3!

23 ♖xc2 ♖c3  
 24 ♖de1 ♖xe5?

Watson considers 24...♖xa2 25 gxf5 ♖b4! 26 ♖b1 ♖d6 to be best, when, although Black's position is still inferior, he can defend.

25 fxe5 fxg4  
 26 ♖d2!

An important intermediate move, after which White wins a piece.

26 ... ♖xa2  
 27 e6! ♖xe6  
 28 ♖xe6 ♖xd4  
 29 ♖h6 ♖b4  
 30 ♖xe7 gxf3  
 31 ♖g7+ ♖h8  
 32 ♖ff7 h2+  
 33 ♖h1 1-0

Game 38  
Gligoric-Petrosian  
USSR v. Yugoslavia 1957

- |   |       |      |
|---|-------|------|
| 1 | e4    | c6   |
| 2 | d4    | d5   |
| 3 | ♟c3   | dxe4 |
| 4 | ♟xe4  | ♟d7  |
| 5 | ♟f3   | ♟gf6 |
| 6 | ♟xf6+ | ♟xf6 |
| 7 | ♟c4   | ♟f5  |
| 8 | ♟e5   | e6   |
| 9 | ♟b3   |      |

Now White threatens to pursue the bishop: 10 g4 ♟e4 11 f3 ♟g6 12 h4.

9 ... ♟d6

10 ♜e2 ♟d7

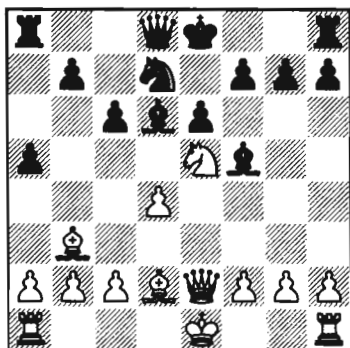
10...♜c7 is more logical.

11 ♟d2

The idea of the knight sacrifice at f7 is, as they say, in the air, but for the moment it is ineffective: 11 ♟xf7 ♟xf7 12 g4 ♟f6! 13 gxf5 ♜a5+ 14 ♟d2 ♜xf5

11 ... a5?

But now the time is ripe! 11...♟xe5 12 dxe5 ♜c7 was essential.



12 ♟xf7! ♟xf7

13 g4 ♜f6

If 13...♟g6 there follows 14 ♜xe6+ and 15 ♜xd6.

14 gxf5 ♜xf5

15 0-0-0 a4

Otherwise White plays 16 c4.

16 ♟c4 ♟f6

17 ♜hg1 ♜ae8

Black parries the threat of 18 ♟xe6+ ♜xe6 19 ♜xg7+ while leaving his rook at h8 for the defence of the kingside. White's position is so impressive, that it seems a miracle that Petrosian was able to hold out for a further 55 moves.

18 ♜g5 ♜e4

19 ♟e3 a3

20 ♜dg1 g6

21 ♟d3 ♜h4

22 ♜f3 axb2+

23 ♟b1 ♟e7

24 ♜a5 ♜a8

25 ♜e5 ♜hf8

After 25...♜xa2 26 ♟xa2 ♟xe5 White can play 27 c3.

26 ♟g5 ♜xd4

27 ♜e4 ♜c5

27...♜c3 fails to 28 ♜xe6+! ♟xe6 29 ♟f5+.

28 ♜h3

As shown by Gligoric himself, here he chose an inexact move order (28 ♟c4 was more accurate), since now Black could have played 28...♜f5!

28 ... e5

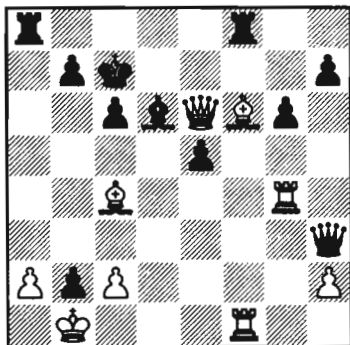
29 ♟c4 ♟d8

30 ♜e6 ♟c7

If 30...♟e7 there follows 31 ♜d1+ ♟c7 32 ♜xe5.



31 ♖xf6 ♔xf2  
 32 ♖f1 ♔g2  
 33 ♖g4 ♔h3



34 ♖d1?!

After the simple 34 ♖gg1 Black would have been defenceless. Now in a severe time scramble Petrosian as though gains a second wind.

34 ... ♖xf6  
 35 ♔xf6 ♔xg4  
 36 ♔xd6+ ♔b6  
 37 ♖e6 ♔e4  
 38 ♔xb2 g5  
 39 ♖b3?

After 39 ♖d3! the game would have concluded much more quickly.

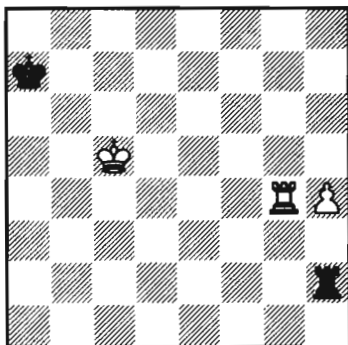
39 ... g4  
 40 ♖f1 h5  
 41 ♖f7 ♔d4+  
 42 ♔xd4+ exd4  
 43 ♖f4 ♖d8

The sealed move. 43...♖e8 44 ♖xd4 ♖e2 was interesting, when after 45 h3 g3 46 ♖d3 h4 or 45 h4 ♖h2 46 ♖d7 ♖xh4 it is hard for White to capitalise on his extra piece (Gligoric).

44 ♖c4 ♔c5  
 45 ♔b3 b5  
 46 ♖f5+ ♔b6  
 47 ♖f1 c5  
 48 ♖xh5 c4+  
 49 ♔b4 d3  
 50 ♖xb5+! ♔a7  
 51 cxd3

51 c3 does not work, since the loss of the h-pawn leads to a rook ending with a- and c-pawns, which is well known for its drawing tendencies.

51 ... cxd3  
 52 ♖g5 d2  
 53 ♖e2 d1=♔  
 54 ♖xd1 ♖xd1  
 55 ♖xg4 ♖d2  
 56 h4 ♖xa2  
 57 ♔c5 ♖h2



58 ♖b4!

Cutting off the king at the maximum distance from the passed pawn. After the complacent 58 ♔d6 ♔b7 59 ♔e6 ♔c7 60 ♔f6 ♔d7 61 ♔g5 ♔e7 the black king is in the drawing zone.

58 ... ♔a6

59	♔c6	♞c2+
60	♔d6	♞c1
61	♔e6	♞c5
62	♔f6	♔a5
63	♞f4	♔b6
64	♔g6	♞c1
65	h5	♞g1+
66	♔f7	♔c7
67	♞f6	♔d7
68	h6	♞h1
69	♔g7	♔e7
70	♞g6	♞f1
71	h7	♞f7+
72	♔h6	1-0

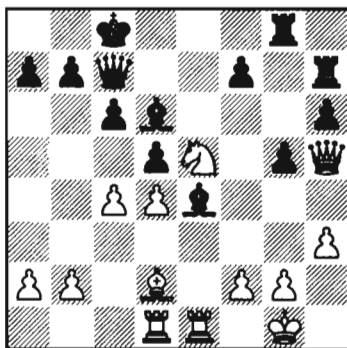
Game 39  
Yakovich-Hoogendoorn  
Amsterdam 1995

1	e4	c6
2	d4	d5
3	♖c3	dxe4
4	♖xe4	♖d7
5	♖f3	♖gf6
6	♖xf6+	♖xf6
7	♙c4	♙f5
8	♖e5	e6
9	0-0	♙d6
10	♗e2	♗c7
11	h3	h6
12	♞e1	0-0-0
13	♙b3	♖d5
14	♙d2	g5
15	♗h5	♞h7

In the event of 15... ♞d8 White follows the same plan as in the game: 16 ♙xd5 cxd5 (16...exd5? 17 ♗xf7) 17 c4! dxc4 18 ♞ac1 ♙xe5 19 ♞xe5 ♔b8 20 b3, opening lines for an attack on the castled position.

16	♞ad1	♞g8
17	♙xd5!	exd5
18	c4	♙e4?

Allowing a decisive exchange sacrifice. 18...dxc4!? 19 ♖xc4 ♙e6 was essential.



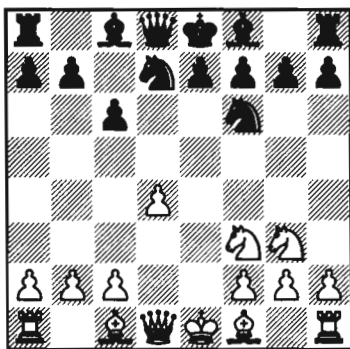
19	♞xe4!	dxe4
20	♗g4+	♔d8

If 20... ♔b8 there follows 21 ♖d7+ ♔a8 22 ♖f6. But now White strikes a blow from the flank.

21	♙a5!	b6
22	♗xe4	f5
23	♖xc6+	♔c8
24	♗e6+	1-0

## 10: 6 ♞g3 e6

- |   |      |      |
|---|------|------|
| 1 | e4   | c6   |
| 2 | d4   | d5   |
| 3 | ♟c3  | dxe4 |
| 4 | ♞xe4 | ♞d7  |
| 5 | ♞f3  | ♞gf6 |
| 6 | ♞g3  |      |



This knight retreat leads to more complicated play. From here it can in some cases be included in the attack on the king (♞g3-h5). Black's main counterplay again involves undermining the centre by ...c6-c5.

6 ... e6

6...c5 is examined in Chapter 11.

The attempt to exploit the 'awkward' position of the knight at g3 by 6...h5 can be met by 7 ♠d3 since 7...h4 runs into the typical attack 8 ♞f5 h3 9 gxf3 ♞xf3 10 ♞e2 e6 11 ♞g5 ♞h8 12 ♞xe6!, while after 7...e6 8 ♞e2 c5 9 ♞g5 ♞a5+ 10 ♠d2 ♞b6 11 0-0-0 cxd4 12 ♞he1 ♠c5 13 c3! dxc3 14 ♠xc3 White has a strong

initiative (Gurgenidze-Kopylov, USSR 1958).

7 ♠d3

The more modest 7 ♠e2 c5 8 0-0 is no less dangerous:

(a) 8...♞c7 9 c4 cxd4 10 ♞xd4 b6 11 ♠f4 ♞c5 12 ♞c3 ♠b7 13 ♞ad1 ♠e7 14 ♞d4! (after 14 ♞g5? 0-0 15 ♞c2 ♞fd8! 16 b4 ♞c6 Black gained the better chances in Conquest-Speelman, Hastings 1995) 14...e5 (or 14...0-0 15 ♞b5) 15 ♞b3 ♞c7 16 ♠e3 0-0 17 ♞f5 and White retains a slight, but enduring advantage;

(b) 8...cxd4 9 ♞xd4 (also interesting is 9 ♞xd4 ♠e7 10 ♠f4 0-0 11 c4 b6 12 ♞e4 ♠b7 13 ♞c3, and here in Westerinen-Christiansen, Wijk aan Zee 1976, Black could have maintained equal chances by 13...♞c5) 9...♠c5 10 b3 0-0 11 ♠b2 a6 12 c4 ♞c7 13 a3 b6 14 b4 ♠e7 15 ♠f3 (or 15 ♞e1 ♠b7 16 ♠d3 ♞fe8 17 ♞e2?! ♞f8 18 ♞ac1 ♞g6 19 ♞c2 ♞f4 20 ♠f1 ♞ad8, Waitzkin-Serper, New York 1996; 17 ♞h5!?) 15...♠b7 16 ♠xb7 ♞xb7 17 ♞e2, and White's chances are slightly preferable.

7 ... c5

The most energetic move. Delaying this attack on the centre allows White to retain an enduring initiative: 7...♠e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♞e2 b6 (9...c5!) 10 c4 ♠b7 11 ♠f4 ♞e8 12 ♞ad1 c5 13 dxc5 bxc5?! 14 ♞e5 ♞b6 15 ♠xh7+! ♞xh7 16 ♞xd7 with

advantage to White (Tal-Miles, Porz 1981/2).

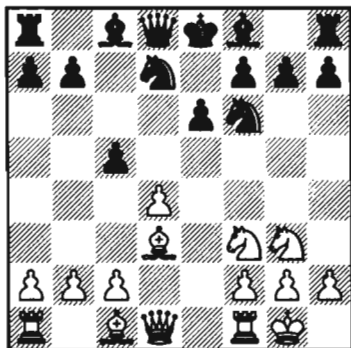
8 0-0

Accurate play is also required of Black after the modest 8 c3 cxd4 9 ♟xd4 ♟c5 (the less active 9...♟e7 10 0-0 ♟e5 11 ♟c2 ♟d7 12 ♞e1 ♟c6 13 ♟f3 ♞c7 14 ♞e2 allowed White the better chances in Bronstein-Petrosian, Moscow 1967 – *Game 3*) 10 ♟c2:

(a) 10...♟e5?! 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♟g5 h6 13 ♟xf6 ♞xf6 14 ♞e1 ♟d7 15 ♟h5! ♞g5 16 h4! ♞xh4 17 ♞e4 ♞e7 18 ♟f5 with a strong attack for White (Tseshkovsky-Bagirov, Telavi 1982);

(b) 10...b6 11 ♟e4 ♟b7 12 ♟xc5 ♟xc5 13 0-0 0-0 14 ♞e1 and White's chances are preferable (Mark Tseitlin-Bagirov, Telavi 1982);

(c) 10...0-0 11 0-0 ♞c7 (or 11...♞e8 12 ♟g5 a6 13 ♞f3 ♟xd4 14 cxd4 ♞a5 15 ♟e3 ♞d5 16 ♞e2 b6 17 ♟b3±, Taulbut-Speelman, Hastings 1981/2) 12 ♞e1 ♞d8 13 ♟e3 b6 14 ♞e2 ♟b7 with equal chances (Thipsay-Speelman, British Ch 1984) – *Game 40*.

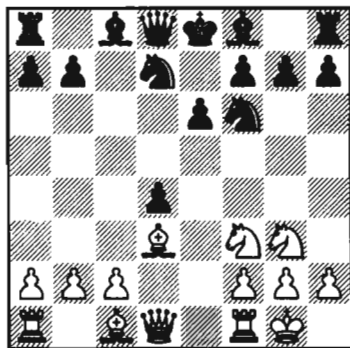


Now Black's main continuations are 8...cxd4 (10.1) and 8...♟e7 (10.2).

He can also consider the little-studied 8...♟d6 9 dxc5 ♟xc5 (9...♟xc5 10 ♟b5+) 10 b3 0-0 11 ♟b2 b6 12 ♞e2 ♟b7 13 ♟e4 ♟e7 14 ♞ad1 ♞c7 (14...♟d5 15 ♟b5!) 15 ♟eg5 ♟c5 16 ♟e5 ♞c8! (this is more accurate than 16...♞c6 17 ♟b5 ♞c8 18 b4 ♟ce4 19 ♟xe4 ♟xe4 20 ♟xf6 ♟xf3 21 ♞xf3 ♟xf6 22 ♟c6±) 17 ♟xf6 gxf6 18 ♟xh7 ♞d8 (18...♟xd3? 19 ♞xd3 ♞d8 20 ♟e5!±) 19 ♟e5! fxe5 20 ♞g4+ ♟h8 21 ♞h5 ♟g8 22 ♞g4+ ½-½ (Tiviakov-Kamsky, Groningen 1994). Instead of 10 b3 Tiviakov recommends 10 ♞e2!? with the idea of ♟e4.

10.1 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♟c3 dxe4 4 ♟xe4 ♟d7 5 ♟f3 ♟gf6 6 ♟g3 e6 7 ♟d3 c5 8 0-0)

8 ... cxd4



A radical decision. Black eliminates the pawn centre.

9 ♟xd4 ♟c5

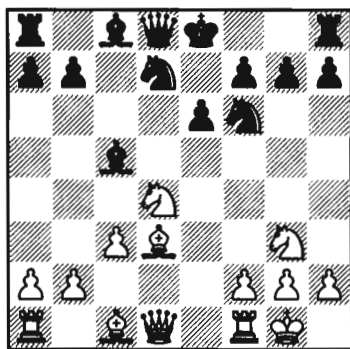
If 9...♘c5 there is the good reply 10 ♙c4.

Now White's knight is attacked and his main continuations are 10 c3 (10.11), 10 ♘b3 (10.12) and 10 ♘f3 (10.13).

The drawbacks to 10 ♙e3 are emphasised by the manoeuvre ...♘d5, e.g. 10...0-0 11 ♚e2 ♘d5! 12 ♚ad1 ♘xe3 13 fxe3 g6 14 ♘e4 ♙e7 15 ♙b5 ♚b6, and Black's position is already preferable (Cherepkov-Petrovian, 28th USSR Ch 1961).

10.11 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 dxe4 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7 5 ♘f3 ♘gf6 6 ♘g3 e6 7 ♙d3 c5 8 0-0 cxd4 9 ♘xd4 ♙c5)

10 c3



White defends his knight.

10 ... 0-0

Black can give his opponent an isolated d-pawn by 10...♙xd4 11 cxd4 0-0, but he has to defend carefully:

(a) 12 ♙f4 ♘b6 (if 12...♘d5?! 13 ♙d6 ♚e8 14 ♚e1 ♘7f6 15 ♙e5 ♙d7

16 a4 ♙c6 17 ♚a3 with an attack, Varavin-Komarov, Novosibirsk 1989) 13 ♚e1 ♙d7 14 ♘h5 ♙c6 15 ♙e5 ♘bd7 16 ♘xf6+ ♘xf6 17 ♚e3 g6 18 ♚h3 ♚e8! with an equal game (Plachetka-Meduna, Kralove 1981);

(b) 12 ♙g5 ♚a5 (or 12...h6 13 ♙f4 ♘b6 14 ♙c2 ♘bd5 15 ♙e5 ♚b6 16 ♚d3, and here in Tal-Flesch, Lvov 1981, Black risked 16...♘b4? 17 ♚d2 ♘xc2 18 ♙xf6! ♘xa1 19 ♘h5 and came under a strong attack) 13 h4 h6 14 ♙f4 b6 15 ♚e1 ♙b7 with equal chances (Howell-Kumaran, British Ch 1990).

11 ♚e2

Or 11 ♚e1 a6 12 ♘h5 ♙xd4! 13 cxd4 ♚a5 14 ♘xf6+ ♘xf6 15 ♙d2 ♚b6 16 ♙g5 ♘d5 17 ♚h5 f5 with equality.

11 ... b6!

11...♙xd4 is premature: 12 cxd4 ♘b6 13 ♚d1 ♘bd5 14 ♘h5!±.

12 ♘e4

Weaker is 12 ♚f3 ♘d5 13 c4 ♙xd4 14 cxd5 ♘c5! 15 dxe6 ♙xe6 with slightly the better chances for Black.

12 ... ♙b7

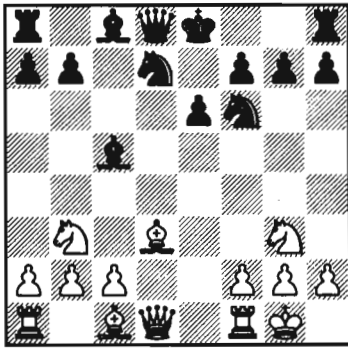
13 ♘xc5 ♘xc5

14 ♙c4 a6

The game is equal (Dvoiris-Epishin, 58th USSR Ch 1991).

10.12 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 dxe4 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7 5 ♘f3 ♘gf6 6 ♘g3 e6 7 ♙d3 c5 8 0-0 cxd4 9 ♘xd4 ♙c5)

10 ♘b3



10 ... e7

This is considered the soundest move.

10...d6?! involves a loss of time: 11 e1 c7 12 d4 c5 13 b5 b6 14 f3 0-0 15 c3 e8 16 ce4 e7 17 b3 e5 18 dxf6+ xxf6 19 xe5!, and White gains the advantage (Vogt-Konig, Berlin 1990).

But 10...b6 comes into consideration: 11 e2 0-0 12 d2 a5 (risky is 12...c7 13 c4 e5 14 f3 xb2 15 c3 a3 16 ffe1 e8 17 e4 e7 18 c5 c7 19 g3 b8 20 ad1, when White has sufficient compensation for the pawn, Tischbierek-Jaster, Cottbus 1983) 13 a4 c7 14 ffe1 e8 15 e4 e5 16 f3 xe4 17 xe4 f6 18 h4 d7 with equal chances (Lechtinsky-Meduna, Trnava 1982).

11 e1

11 f4 can be met by 11...d5 12 d2 0-0 13 c4 f6 (not 13...b4?! 14 xb4 xb4 15 c2±) 14 f4 e8 (14...b6 15 e4 a6 16 we2±) 15 c2 b6 16 ad1 b7 17 ffe1

c8 18 e4 xe4 19 xe4 f6 20 xb7 xb7 with an equal game (Glek-Epishin, Russian Ch 1995).

Tiviakov recommends 11 a!?, and if Black does not prevent the pawn's further advance (by 11...a5), but plays, for example, 11...b6, then 12 a5 b7 13 a6 d5 (13...c6 14 d4±) 14 c4 c6 15 d4 and White gains a spatial advantage.

11 ... 0-0

12 f3 a5

12...e8, preparing ...e6-e5, is also possible, e.g. 13 d2 d6! 14 a5 (or 14 c3 c7! 15 h5 e5!?) 14...c7 15 c3 d5 16 d2 f6 with an equal game (Golubev-Solozhenkin, Le Touquet 1994).

13 a4 d5

Tiviakov-Adams (match (1), New York 1994) went 13...b6 14 d2 bd5 15 b5 d7 (15...c7 can be met by 16 c4 b4 17 f4 d6 18 xd6 xxd6 19 ad1±) 16 c4 xb5 (weaker is 16...b4 17 xb4! xb4 18 ed1 c7 19 e4! xb5 20 dxf6+ gxf6 21 cxb5 with advantage to White, Tiviakov) 17 axb5?! b4 18 xb7 c2 with chances for both sides, but, as shown by Tiviakov, by playing 17 cxd5 c4 18 dxe6 xe6 19 f5 White would have retained the better game.

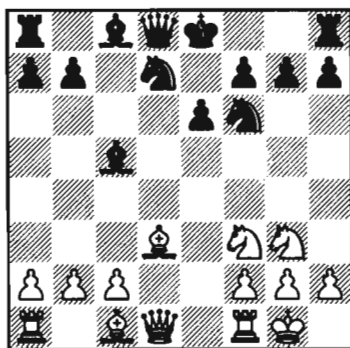
14 b5 b4

15 e2 f6

Leko-Epishin (Dortmund 1994) now continued 16 c3 bd5 17 d4 b6 18 f3 d7 19 d3 fd8 20 e5 e8 21 e4 xe4 22 we4 f6 with an equal game.

10.13 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3  
dxe4 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7 5 ♘f3 ♘gf6 6  
♘g3 e6 7 ♙d3 c5 8 0-0 cxd4 9  
♘xd4 ♙c5)

10 ♘f3



White maintains control over e5.

10 ... 0-0

11 ♙e2 b6

12 ♙f4

12 ♘e4 ♙b7 13 ♘xc5 ♘xc5 14  
♙c4 ♙c7 15 ♘e5 ♘d5= is harmless  
for Black (Paunovic).

12 ... ♙b7

13 ♚ad1 ♙c8

13...♘d5? is not good on account  
of 14 ♙g5! ♙c7 15 ♘h5 ♘h8 16 ♙e4  
f6 17 ♙h4 ♙d6 18 c4 ♙a6 19 ♘xg7!  
with a strong attack for White (Tal-  
Vasyukov, 32nd USSR Ch 1964/5).

14 ♘h1 ♚d8

15 ♘e5

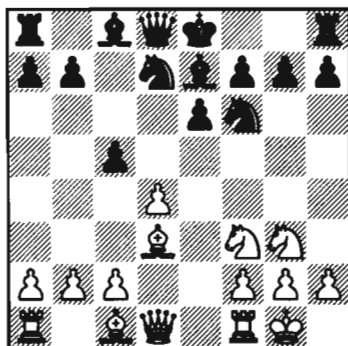
Or 15 ♘g5 ♙e7 16 ♘f5 ♙f8 17  
♘d4 ♚e8 18 ♘b5 e5 with a good  
game for Black (Chandler-Wells,  
England 1985).

Now 15...♘xe5 16 ♙xe5 ♙c6 17

f3 ♙e7 18 ♘e4 ♘d7 19 ♙c3 ♘c5  
leads to an unexplored position  
(Karpov).

10.2 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 dxe4  
4 ♘xe4 ♘d7 5 ♘f3 ♘gf6 6 ♘g3  
e6 7 ♙d3 c5 8 0-0)

8 ... ♙e7



Black does not hurry to release the  
pawn tension, and retains the option  
(after dxc5) of recapturing on c5 with  
his knight.

9 ♙e2

The alternative plan involves the  
fianchetto: 9 b3 0-0 10 ♙b2 (or 10 c4  
cxd4 11 ♘xd4 ♘e5 12 ♙c2 ♙b6 13  
♘f3 ♚d8 14 ♙e2 ♘xf3+ 15 ♙xf3  
♙d7 16 ♙b2 ♙c6 17 ♙e2 ♙c5 18 a4  
♙g5 19 ♙c3 h5 20 ♘e4 ♘xe4 21  
♙xe4 h4 22 ♚ad1 ♚ac8 with an equal  
game, Tiviakov-Kamsky, Madrid  
1994) 10...b6 11 ♙e2 ♙b7 12 c4 ♚e8  
13 dxc5 ♙xc5?! (13...bxc5!? comes  
into consideration) 14 ♘g5 ♙e7 15  
♚ad1 ♚ad8 16 ♘5e4 ♘xe4 17 ♙xe4!  
♙xe4 18 ♘xe4 with some advantage

to White (Tiviakov-Adams, match (11), New York 1994).

9 ... 0-0

10 ♖d1

The plan of strengthening the centre by 10 c3 b6 11 ♖e5 ♗b7 12 f4 was discredited in the game Evseev-Flohr (USSR 1949), where after 12...cxd4 13 cxd4 ♖xe5 14 dxe5 ♗g4! 15 ♗xh7+ ♗xh7 16 ♜xg4 ♜d4+ 17 ♗h1 ♞ac8 Black gained fine play for the pawn.

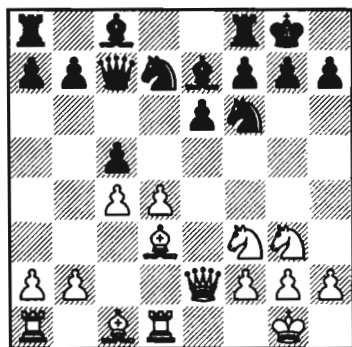
10 ... ♜c7

10...cxd4 11 ♖xd4 is less good for Black:

(a) 11...♞e8 12 b3 ♜b6 13 ♗b2 ♖f8 14 ♖f3 with the better chances for White (Tal-Filip, Moscow 1967);

(b) 11...♖c5 12 ♗c4 ♜c7 13 ♖b5 ♜b8 14 ♖f5! with advantage to White (Schaefer-Szabolcsi, Budapest 1991).

11 c4



11 ... ♞e8

After 11...cxd4 12 ♖xd4 White has active piece play:

(a) 12...a6 13 b3 (13 a3!? b6 14 b4 ♗b7 15 ♗b2± also comes into con-

sideration) 13...♞e8 14 ♗b2 b6 15 ♖h5 ♗b7 16 ♖xe6 with a very sharp game (Kasparov-Karpov, Amsterdam 1988) – *Game 41*. However, the piece sacrifice is not obligatory. Karpov and Zaitsev recommend 16 ♞ac1!? ♞ac8 17 c5!? (vacating a square for the bishop) 17...bxc5 18 ♖xe6 ♜c6 (after 18...fxe6? 19 ♜xe6+ ♖f8 20 ♗c4 or 19...♗h8 20 ♜f7 Black loses) 19 ♖ef4, when White's chances are preferable;

(b) 12...♖c5 13 ♖b5 ♜c6 14 ♗c2 b6 15 ♖f5! exf5 16 ♜xe7 ♗b7 17 f3 ♞ae8 18 ♜d6 with advantage to White, who effectively has an extra pawn on the queenside (Aseev-Arkell, Leningrad 1989);

(c) 12...b6 13 ♖b5 ♜c6 14 ♗g5 a6 15 ♖e4 ♗b7 16 ♖d4 ♜c8 17 ♞ac1± (Karpov, Zaitsev).

12 dxc5 ♖xc5

13 ♗c2 ♖cd7!

Black takes control of e5 and brings his knight to the defence of the kingside. After 13...b6 14 ♖e5 ♗b7 15 ♗f4 White has a solid initiative.

14 ♖g5

Preventing 14...b6 due to 15 ♖xh7!

14 ... ♖f8

15 ♖3e4 ♖xe4

In the event of 15...♗d7 16 ♖xf6+ ♗xf6 17 ♜d3 ♗xg5 18 ♗xg5 White has a slight but enduring advantage:

(a) 18...♜e5 19 ♜d2 ♗c6 20 b3 with the better chances (Tiviakov-Adams, match (9), New York 1994);

(b) 18...♞ac8 19 ♞ac1 ♜e5 (risky is 19...♜a5 20 ♗d2 ♜xa2 21 ♗b4 ♗c6 22 ♗a3±, Adams) 20 ♜d2 ♗c6



21 b4 b6 22 ♔f4 ♚f6 23 ♘g5 ♚e5 24 ♚e1 and White's chances are better (Adams-Karpov, Dortmund 1994).

16 ♘xe4

Both sides have chances.

16 ♚xe4!? is weaker on account of 16...f5! 17 ♚e2 ♘d7 18 ♘f3 ♘f6, when Black's chances are preferable (Leko-Lutz, Horgen 1994).

Game 40

Thipsay-Speelman

British Championship 1984

1	e4	c6
2	d4	d5
3	♘c3	dxe4
4	♘xe4	♘d7
5	♘f3	♘gf6
6	♘g3	e6
7	♘d3	c5
8	c3	cxd4
9	♘xd4	♘c5
10	♘c2	0-0
11	0-0	♚c7

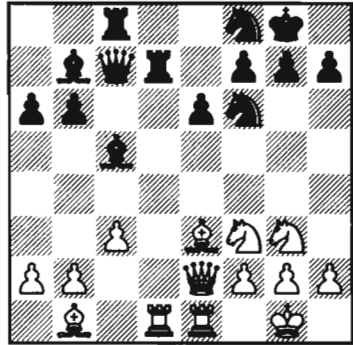
Otherwise the pin 10 ♘g5 is unpleasant.

12	♚e1	♚d8
13	♘e3	b6
14	♚e2	♘b7
15	♚ad1	a6
16	♘b1	♚ac8
17	♚c2?!	

A loss of time – 17 ♘h5 is better.

17	...	♘f8
18	♚e2	♚d7
19	♘f3?!	

19 ♘g5 is more active, although after 19...♘d4 20 cxd4 White is obliged to play with an isolated pawn.



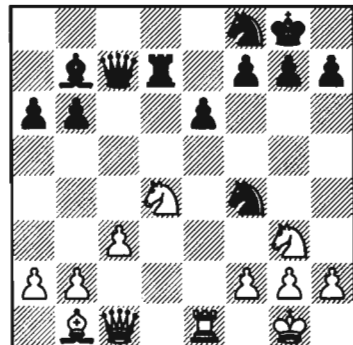
19	...	♘xe3
20	♚xe3	♚cd8
21	♚xd7	

White should not have conceded the d-file. 21 ♚e2 was more logical.

21	...	♚xd7
22	♘d4	♘d5
23	♚c1	

White sounds the retreat, but whereas 'activity' by 23 ♚e5 ♚xe5 24 ♚xe5 ♘f4 is clearly unfavourable for him, 23 ♚g5!? looks perfectly reasonable (Speelman).

23	...	♘f4
----	-----	-----



24 ♖e4?

An oversight, but of course even after 24 f3 White would have been in difficulties.

24 ... ♜xd4!

25 cxd4 ♜xc1

26 ♜xc1 ♖xe4

White does not even have the consolation of any pawns in return for his material deficit.

27 f3 ♖d5

28 a3 f5!

29 ♜c8 ♖f7

30 ♜c7+ ♖f6

31 b4 ♜8g6

32 ♜a7 ♖c4

33 ♜b7 b5

34 ♜b6 ♜h4

35 ♜xa6 ♜hxg2

36 ♜f1 ♜e1

37 ♜d2 ♜h3+

In conclusion Black weaves a mating net.

38 ♖h1 ♖d5

0-1

Game 41  
Kasparov-Karpov  
Amsterdam 1988

- |    |      |       |
|----|------|-------|
| 1  | e4   | c6    |
| 2  | d4   | d5    |
| 3  | ♟d2  | dx e4 |
| 4  | ♞xe4 | ♟d7   |
| 5  | ♞f3  | ♞gf6  |
| 6  | ♞g3  | e6    |
| 7  | ♖d3  | ♖e7   |
| 8  | 0-0  | c5    |
| 9  | ♜e2  | 0-0   |
| 10 | ♜d1  | ♜c7   |

11 c4 cxd4

In recent times Karpov himself has preferred the restrained 11...♞e8.

12 ♞xd4 a6

13 b3

13 ♞e4 gives only an equal game after 13...♞xe4 14 ♜xe4 ♞f6 15 ♖f4 ♜xc4!

13 ... ♞e8

13...b6 14 ♖b2 ♖b7 is weaker in view of 15 ♞df5! exf5 16 ♜xe7.

14 ♖b2 b6

15 ♞h5 ♖b7

16 ♞xe6!?

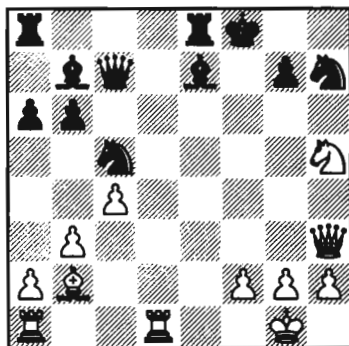
An experimental knight sacrifice, which has not been repeated as yet in any high-level games.

16 ... fxe6

17 ♜xe6+ ♖f8

18 ♖xh7 ♞c5

19 ♜h3 ♞xh7



20 ♖xg7+?!

White has already sacrificed two pieces, and although the black king is exposed, there are no real threats. It was time to regain some material: 20 b4!? g6! 21 ♞g7 ♖f6 22 ♞xe8 ♜xe8

23 ♙xf6 ♘xf6 24 bxc5 ♚xc5 with chances for both sides (Karpov, Zaitsev).

20 ... ♖g8

21 ♙b2

21 ♙d4!? was somewhat stronger: 21... ♚c6 22 ♙xc5 bxc5 23 ♙d7. Now, however, Black creates counter-threats and exchanges several pieces.

21 ... ♚c6!

22 ♙d4 ♘e4!

23 ♙e1 ♘eg5

24 ♚g4 ♙a3!

25 ♙c3 ♙xe1+

26 ♙xe1 ♙e8

27 ♙d2 ♙c1!

28 h4 ♙xd2

29 ♙xd2 ♙e1+

29... ♚e6 is simpler, forcing the exchange of queens.

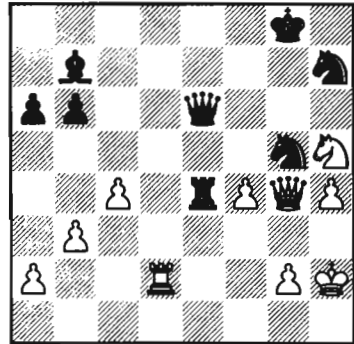
30 ♖h2 ♙e4?

A mistake, after which White gains a second wind. This move should have preceded by 30... ♚c7+ – 31 ♘f4 ♙e4.

31 f4 ♚e6?

Now even Black's two extra pieces are unable to compensate for his two

successive mistakes. He should have reconciled himself to 31... ♙c8 32 ♙d8+ ♙e8 33 ♙xe8+ ♚xe8 34 ♚xg5+! ♘xg5 35 ♘f6+ ♖f8 36 ♘xe8, when even so White has four pawns for the piece.



32 ♙d8+! ♖f7

33 ♙d7+ ♖f8

34 ♚xe6 ♙xe6

35 hxg5 ♙e7

36 ♙xe7 ♖xe7

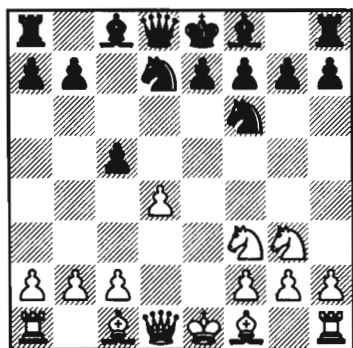
37 g4 ♙e4

38 ♖g3 ♙b1

39 a3 1–0 (time)

# 11: 6...c5

1 e4 c6  
 2 d4 d5  
 3 ♘c3 dxe4  
 4 ♗xe4 ♗d7  
 5 ♖f3 ♗gf6  
 6 ♗g3 c5



A fashionable continuation, by which Black hopes to manage without having to play ...e7-e6 (in the event of 7 ♗d3).

White's main continuations here are 7 dxc5 (11.1) and 7 ♗d3 (11.2).

After 7 ♗c4, apart from the simple 7...♗b6 8 ♗b5+ ♗d7, Black can also implement the extended fianchetto with 8 ♗e2 e6 9 0-0 a6 10 c4 bxc4 11 ♗xc4 ♗b7 12 ♖e1 ♗e7, after which his pieces are well mobilised:

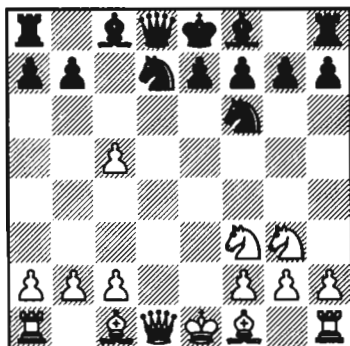
(a) 13 b3 0-0 14 ♗b2 ♗b6 (14...cxd4 15 ♗xd4 ♖a5= is also possible) 15 ♗f1 ♖c8 16 ♖c1 ♗bd5 17 ♗e5 cxd4 (or 17...♖b6 18 ♖c4±, Kir.Georgiev-Gulko, Groningen 1994)

18 ♖xd4 ♖xc1 19 ♖xc1 ♖a8 20 ♗c4 a5 with equal chances (Georgiev);

(b) 13 ♗g5 0-0 (if 13...h6 Black has to reckon with the attack 14 ♗xf7!? ♗xf7 15 ♗xe6+ ♗f8 16 ♗f5) 14 ♖xe6 ♗d5 (after 14...fxe6 15 ♗xe6 ♖b6 16 dxc5 ♗xc5 17 ♗xc5+ White has the initiative: 17...♗h8 18 ♗xb7 ♖xb7 19 ♗e3 ♖xb2 20 ♖b1 ♖ad8 21 ♖e1!, Golubev) 15 ♗xd5 ♗xd5 16 dxc5!, and White's position is preferable (Golubev-Savchenko, Bucharest 1996).

11.1 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 dxe4 4 ♗xe4 ♗d7 5 ♖f3 ♗gf6 6 ♗g3 c5)

7 dxc5



The critical reply, with which White hopes to extract positional gains.

7 ... e6

## 8 c6

Black's idea is justified if White tries to defend his pawn: 8 b4 b6 (8...a5?! 9 c3 axb4 10 cxb4 b6 11 a4 bxc5 12 b5! favours White) 9 e2 (9 e5?!? bxc5 10 e6 e8 11 b5 comes into consideration) 9...bxc5 10 b5 e7 11 c4 e7 12 e2 e6 13 a4 a5 14 e2 h5 15 f1 (15 0-0-0 e4+ 16 e1 h4 17 f1 h3 18 g3 e4 with a good game for Black) 15...0-0-0 16 f1d2 e4 17 e3? e4! 18 e3 g5 19 e5 e5+ 20 e5 g4 and Black gained the advantage (Tiviakov-Adams, Ischia 1995).

Instead of 17 e3? Adams suggests 17 e3, but here too after 17...g5 18 e3 g4 19 e5 e5+ 20 e5d8 e8d8 21 e4 e5 22 0-0 e4h4 Black has a good game.

8 ... bxc6

9 e2

If 9 e3 Black has the good reply 9...e5.

9 ... e7

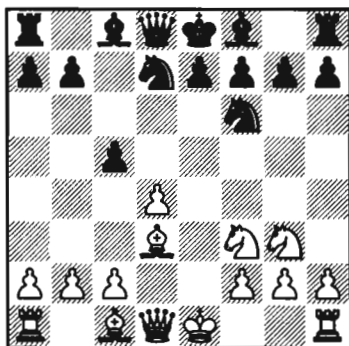
9...h5, threatening a flank attack, is also interesting, e.g. 10 f1 e5 11 e3 e4 12 h3 e3 13 e3 e3 14 fe3 e6 15 e4 e5? 16 e3 e8 17 0-0-0, and White's control of the d-file gives him the advantage (Vogt-Speelman, Altensteig 1994). 15...e4d4 16 e4d4 is sounder, although here too White has the better endgame.

Tiviakov-Gulko (Groningen 1994) now continued 10 0-0 e7 11 c4 0-0 12 e2 a5 13 e3 e4 14 e2 e3 15 e3 e3 e7 16 e4 c5 17 e5 e5 18 e5 e5 19 f4 e4

20 e3 e3 21 e3, with slightly the better ending for White.

11.2 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e3 dx4 4 e4 d7 5 e3 e6 6 e3 c5)

7 e3



As in the main variation, White continues his development.

7 ... cxd4

After 7...g6 8 0-0 e7 White can defend his centre with 9 c3, not fearing the creation of an isolated pawn, since he can advantageously use the pressure of his rooks on the e- and c-files, e.g. 9...0-0 10 e1 cxd4 11 cxd4 b6 12 e2 e5 13 e5 e7 14 e1 c8 15 e5! h6 16 e8 e8 17 e1 d8 18 e2 e7 19 e5 e6 20 e6, and the occupation of the weak c6 square gives him the advantage (Apicella-Arkell, Capelle la Grande 1991)

8 e4d4 g6

An alternative is 8...e5 9 e5+ e7 10 0-0 a6 (less good is

10...♙xb5?! 11 ♟xb5 a6 12 ♟d4 g6  
 13 ♙e3 ♟d5 14 ♚f3 e6 15 ♜ad1 ♚f6  
 16 ♟df5! with advantage to White,  
 Hausner-Luce, Prague 1992) 11  
 ♙xd7+ ♚xd7 12 b3 g6 13 ♙b2 ♙g7  
 14 ♚e2 0-0 15 ♜fe1 ♜fe8 16 ♜ad1  
 with slightly the better chances for  
 White (Luther-Arkell, Leningrad  
 1989).

9 0-0 ♙g7

10 c3 0-0

11 ♜e1 a6

Or 11...♟c5 12 ♙c2 ♙g4 13 ♚d2  
 ♜c8 with equal chances (Zapata-  
 Spiridonov, Moscow 1989).

12 ♙c2 ♜e8

13 ♙g5

Here in Aseev-Lutz (Budapest  
 1989) Black could have maintained  
 the balance by 13...♚c7.

# List of Illustrative Games

1	Matanovic-Petrosian (USSR v. Yugoslavia 1959)	8
2	Simagin-Smyslov (Moscow 1963)	10
3	Bronstein-Petrosian (Moscow 1967)	11
4	Parma-Smyslov (Lugano Olympiad 1968)	13
5	Wolff-Granda Zuniga (New York 1992)	20
6	Leko-Bakhatdze (Las Palmas 1995)	22
7	Kasparov-Karpov (Amsterdam 1988)	23
8	Lautier-Karpov (Biel 1997)	31
9	Kamsky-Karpov (Dortmund 1993)	33
10	Kamsky-Karpov (match (8), Elista 1996)	35
11	Kamsky-Karpov (match (12), Elista 1996)	37
12	A.Sokolov-Karpov (Belfort 1988)	39
13	Timman-Leko (Groningen 1996)	41
14	Kasparov-Kamsky (Linares 1994)	47
15	Gelfand-Speelman (Munich 1992)	48
16	Sion Castro-Karpov (Leon 1993)	49
17	Psakhis-Am.Rodriguez (Sochi 1988)	54
18	De Firmian-Karpov (Biel 1990)	55
19	Smirin-Smyslov (55th USSR Ch 1988)	56
20	Nunn-Tal (Brussels 1988)	57
21	Gufeld-Bagirov (Tallinn 1981)	67
22	Ivanchuk-Karpov (Reykjavik 1991)	68
23	Minasian-Vyzhmanavin (Debrecen 1992)	70
24	Blatny-Adams (Adelaide 1988)	71
25	Adorjan-Flesch (Hungarian Ch 1975)	72
26	Van der Wiel-Balashov (Malta Olympiad 1980)	78
27	Martin-Meduna (Bad Wörishofen 1988)	79
28	Kasparov-Karpov (Linares 1994)	87
29	Short-Gulko (match (3), New York 1994)	88
30	Karpov-Petrosian (Tilburg 1982)	89
31	Liberzon-Smyslov (Biel Interzonal 1976)	91
32	Tal-Petrosian (41st USSR Ch 1973)	92
33	Mikh.Tseitlin-Lutz (Budapest 1989)	93
34	Kasparov-Karpov (Linares 1992)	97

35	Watson-Spiridonov (Palma de Mallorca 1989)	99
36	Short-Speelman (Hastings 1988/9)	100
37	Ivanovic-Watson (Bor 1986)	108
38	Gligoric-Petrosian (USSR v. Yugoslavia 1957)	110
39	Yakovich-Hoogendoorn (Amsterdam 1995)	112
40	Thipsay-Speelman (British Championship 1984)	119
41	Kasparov-Karpov (Amsterdam 1988)	120



# Index of Variations

PART I: 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 dxc4 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7 5 ♘g5 – 15

- 1 5...♘gf6 6 ♘d3 e6 7 ♘1f3 ♘d6 8 0–0 – 17
- 2 8 ♖e2 h6 9 ♘e4 ♘xe4 10 ♖xe4 ♘f6 11 ♖e2 b6 12 ♘d2 ♘b7  
13 0–0–0 ♖c7 – 25
  - 2.1 14 ♘e5 – 28
  - 2.2 14 ♖he1 – 29
  - 2.3 14 ♘b1 – 30
- 3 10...♖c7 – 43
  - 3.1 11 ♖g4 ♘f8 12 0–0 c5 – 43
    - 3.11 13 ♖e1 – 44
    - 3.12 13 c3 – 44
  - 3.2 11 ♘d2 – 45
  - 3.3 11 0–0 – 46
- 4 5...♘df6 – 51
  - 4.1 6 ♘d3 – 51
  - 4.2 6 ♘c4 – 52
  - 4.3 6 ♘1f3 – 53

PART II: 5 ♘c4 ♘gf6 6 ♘g5 e6 7 ♖e2 ♘b6 – 58

- 5 8 ♘d3 h6 9 ♘5f3 c5 10 dxc5 ♘xc5 11 ♘e5 ♘bd7 12 ♘gf3 – 61
  - 5.1 12...♖c7 – 62
    - 5.11 13 0–0 – 62
    - 5.12 13 ♘f4 – 64
  - 5.2 12...♘xe5 13 ♘xe5 0–0 14 ♘d2 ♖d5 – 65
    - 5.21 15 0–0 – 65
    - 5.22 15 0–0–0 – 66
- 6 10...♘bd7 11 b4 – 74
  - 6.1 11...b6 12 ♘d4 – 74
    - 6.11 12...♘d5 – 75
    - 6.12 12...♖c7 – 76

6.2 11...a5 – 76

6.3 11... $\text{d}5$  – 777 8  $\text{b}3$  h6 9  $\text{d}5$ f3 a5 – 82

7.1 10 c3 – 82

7.2 10 a3 – 84

7.3 10 a4 – 85

8 9...c5 – 95

PART III: 5  $\text{d}3$   $\text{d}gf6$  – 1029 6  $\text{d}xf6+$   $\text{d}xf6$  – 1049.1 7  $\text{d}e5$  – 1049.11 7... $\text{d}d7$  – 1059.12 7... $\text{e}6$  – 1069.2 7  $\text{c}4$  – 10710 6  $\text{d}g3$  e6 7  $\text{d}d3$  c5 8 0–0 – 11310.1 8...cxd4 9  $\text{d}xd4$   $\text{c}c5$  – 114

10.11 10 c3 – 115

10.12 10  $\text{d}b3$  – 11510.13 10  $\text{d}f3$  – 11710.2 8... $\text{e}7$  – 117

11 6...c5 – 122

11.1 7 dxc5 – 122

11.2 7  $\text{d}d3$  – 123



**CADOGAN** chess

# Caro-Kann Smyslov System 4...Nd7

The Smyslov Variation of the Caro-Kann is one of the most solid and dependable openings for Black. It is a favourite of many top players, including FIDE World Champion Anatoly Karpov and the British No. 1, Michael Adams, both of whom have used the system to defeat many top-class opponents.

This book presents an objective, detailed coverage of all the lines of the Smyslov System, with special attention devoted to the most dangerous attacking systems available to White - such as that used in Deep Blue's sensational match-clinching victory over Garry Kasparov.

Grandmaster **Eduard Gufeld** is one of the most colourful characters in international chess. His entertaining style of play and lively annotations have gained him many fans around the world. His previous books for Cadogan include *The Modern French Tarrasch* and *An Opening Repertoire for the Attacking Player*.

**Oleg Stetsko** has earned a reputation as a researcher and theoretician of the highest order.

published by  
Cadogan Books plc  
London

ISBN 1-85744-104-4



9 781857 441048